



# **SOCIAL LIFE IN ANCIENT INDIA**

**STUDY IN VĀTSYAYĀNA'S  
KĀMASŪTRA**

**HARAN CHANDRA CHAKLĀDAR**



**COSMO PUBLICATIONS**

First Published 1929  
This Cosmo Print 1984

*Published by:*

Rani Kapoor (Mrs.)  
COSMO PUBLICATIONS  
24-B, Ansari Road  
New Delhi - 110 002

## INTRODUCTORY NOTE

Since its inception the Greater India Society has been receiving help and support from students of Indian History and Culture. Eminent scholars, both Indian and European have given a most cordial *accueil* to this research association by offering their valuable works to be published under the auspices of the Society. Dr. R. C. Majumdar's *Champa* is associated with the Society's name. Last year we had the privilege of presenting to the public the standard work on Hindu Law and Custom by Dr. Jolly in an authorised English translation revised by the author. This year we have the pleasure of publishing two works by Prof. Haran Chandra Chakladar which will surely interest all Indologists. Mr. Chakladar is a professor of Sanskrit and History of long experience and now he is in the Department of Ancient Indian History and Culture of the University of Calcutta.

A scholar of the older generation, he has kept abreast of modern research in his subjects of Indian History, Ethnology and Anthropology by a close study of the important contributions made by the scholarly world of England, France, Germany and Italy.

In the present volume he takes up a most fascinating subject—the Life and Society in Ancient India. The work, as presented herewith, though forming part of a general survey of Social Life in Ancient India, is really a complete and comprehensive study of that life as reflected in one of the most important secular documents that have come down to us from the ancient world—the Kāmasūtra of Vātsyāyana, and we are sure that lovers of Indian lore will fully appreciate its value. Prof. Chakladar's second contribution to our Series will be on the Aryan Occupation of Eastern India which is being published simultaneously.

The best thanks of the Society are due to Prof. Chakladar and to his learned friends who helped us in bringing out the two new volumes. Thanks are also due to the Manager of the Calcutta Oriental Press who spared no pain in seeing the books through the press with great attention and promptitude.

CALCUTTA

July 20, 1929.

KALIDAS NAG

Secretary, Greater India Society

## FOREWORD

The social life in ancient India has not yet received the same attention as the other aspects of ancient Indian history and culture. Only caste has been studied with some care, and from the legal point of view, some other aspects of social life also. But what Zimmer in his *Altindisches Leben* has done for the early Vedic period, still remains to be done for the subsequent ages of Indian civilisation and culture. However, before a synthetic history embracing the long period, through which Indian society has grown and developed, is attempted, an intensive study has to be made of the different ages through which it has come. It was with this object that I took up the study of Vātsyāyana's *Kāma-sūtra* which gives a beautifully vivid picture of Indian society in the early centuries of the Christian era. It wonderfully supplements the account we receive from the sacred literatures, Brahmanical, Buddhistic and Jain. Dealing with an avowedly secular matter as it does, it depicts society from an independent point of view, and gives details, especially of the darker features of social life, with a fulness that we naturally miss in the sacred texts.

An indispensable preliminary was an accurate determination of the time when Vātsyāyana wrote his book, especially as in the history of Indian literature there are very few definite dates. I have therefore first of all discussed this question at some length from internal and external evidence. My paper on the date of the *Kāma-sūtra* was first published in the *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society* in 1919, and again, after a thorough revision, in the *Journal of the Department of Letters* (Vol. IV) of the University of Calcutta. The conclusions arrived at by me have been confirmed by the discussions that my paper has raised, both in India and in Europe, and I have reviewed them towards the end of Chapter I. Prof. A. B. Keith in his recently published *History of Sanskrit Literature*, shows himself inclined to bring down my date by about two centuries, but he has not fully set forth his reasons for thinking so.

Vātsyāyana delineates many local customs—*dēśyopacārāḥ*—as he calls them, characterizing the various peoples of India inhabiting the different parts of its wide area. I have, therefore, thought it necessary, while passing in review the customs peculiar to each province or people to fix the location of the countries about which there have been

controversies among scholars ; this matter has therefore been treated, with some fulness, in Chapter II of this book. It first appeared in the *Annals of the Bhandarkar Institute* (Vols. VII and VIII).

The rest of my book attempts to give as complete an account as possible of the social life of India as depicted by Vātsyāyana, and I have shown how he sometimes corroborates, and very often supplements, the account derived from other sources, specially from works written about his own time, so as to present a fairly accurate idea of the state of Indian society in the period to which Vātsyāyana belongs. Much of the matter contained in Chapters V and VI appeared in the *Sir Asutosh Mookerjee Silver Jubilee Volumes* (Vol. III, Part I) under the caption *Sidelights on social life in Ancient India : Studies in Vātsyāyana's Kāmasūtra*.

The only contributions on the social life of the age of Vātsyāyana that appeared before my studies, are two papers by Prof. P. Peterson referred to in Chapter VI (P. 172). These are mainly translations with short notes of two out of the sixty-four sections of the Kāmasūtra and cover only a very small part of the ground traversed by me.

H. C. C.



## CHAPTER I

### DATE OF THE KÂMASŪTRA

Vâtsyâyana stands pre-eminent in early Indian literature as an author who brought the analytical power of a keen logician to bear on the science of erotics which, in our modern days, has only lately begun to be studied with the care that it deserves. The science had attracted the serious attention of the Indian savants very early, as far back, perhaps, as the time when the *Śâtapatha Brâhmaṇa* was being compiled, and in the centuries that elapsed before Vâtsyâyana made his appearance, the various sections of the science were being studied separately and individually. But it was Vâtsyâyana who synthesised the whole science and revived the popular interest in this branch of knowledge. Apart from its interest as a work on the science of love, Vâtsyâyana's *Kamasutra*, at the present day, is of immense importance to us as throwing a flood of light on the manners and customs of his contemporary Indian society. To appreciate the full value, for the social history of India, of the picture that Vâtsyâyana presents, we must, in the first place, try to ascertain, as closely as possible, the time when he flourished and for this purpose it will be necessary to trace the history of his science, to ascertain his relation to other departments of Indian literature, and also to analyse critically the few references that may be gleaned from his work, to the political history of India.



## CHAPTER I

### DATE OF THE KÂMASŪTRA

Vâtsyâyana stands pre-eminent in early Indian literature as an author who brought the analytical power of a keen logician to bear on the science of erotics which, in our modern days, has only lately begun to be studied with the care that it deserves. The science had attracted the serious attention of the Indian savants very early, as far back, perhaps, as the time when the *Sâtapatha Brâhmaṇa* was being compiled, and in the centuries that elapsed before Vâtsyâyana made his appearance, the various sections of the science were being studied separately and individually. But it was Vâtsyâyana who synthesised the whole science and revived the popular interest in this branch of knowledge. Apart from its interest as a work on the science of love, Vâtsyâyana's *Kamasutra*, at the present day, is of immense importance to us as throwing a flood of light on the manners and customs of his contemporary Indian society. To appreciate the full value, for the social history of India, of the picture that Vâtsyâyana presents, we must, in the first place, try to ascertain, as closely as possible, the time when he flourished and for this purpose it will be necessary to trace the history of his science, to ascertain his relation to other departments of Indian literature, and also to analyse critically the few references that may be gleaned from his work, to the political history of India.

*Vātsyāyana's Reference to Earlier Works on the  
Science of Love.*

In speaking of the origin of the *Kāmasāstra*, Vātsyāyana says at the beginning of his work<sup>1</sup> that at first, *Prajāpati*, the 'Lord of Beings,' for the welfare and preservation of his progeny composed a huge encyclopædia in a hundred thousand chapters dealing with the three objects of human life, *viz.*, *Dharma*, *Artha* and *Kāma*<sup>2</sup>; the first two of these subjects were next taken up by *Manu* and *Brhaspati* respectively and *Nandī* the attendant of Mahādeva, took up the third which he dealt with in a thousand chapters. This last work was condensed into five hundred chapters by *Śvetaketu*, the son of Uddālaka. The work of *Śvetaketu* was further abridged into a hundred and fifty chapters and divided into seven sections by *Bābhravya*, a native of the Pañcāla country. Next, *Dattaka*, at the request of the

1. *Vide* Chapter I of the *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 4-7 of the Benares edition. The quotations from the *Kamasūtra* have been made throughout from the Benares edition, edited by Pandit Dāmodarāl Gosvāmī and published in the *Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series* and the references are to the pages of this edition. The Sanskrit text edited by Mahāmahopādhyāya Pandit Durgāprasad of Jaipur had been published earlier, but the Benares edition is more easily accessible to the public, the Jaipur edition being meant for private circulation alone. There is also a Bengali edition of the text and the commentary with a Bengali translation, published by Babu Maheś Chandra Pal of Calcutta. There is some difference in the arrangement of the chapters; otherwise the readings are much the same with only occasional variations.

2. This agrees with what is said in the *Mahābhārata*, *Sūntiparva*, Ch. 59, with regard to the origin of the sciences. Here we are told that at the request of the gods who were filled with anxiety at the entire absence of discipline among mankind, Prajāpati Brahma produced from his own intelligence a hundred thousand chapters in which were delineated *Dharma*—the science of religion and duty, *Artha*—the science of politics and economics and *Kāma*—the science of love.—

ततोऽव्यायसहस्राणां शतञ्चके स्वदुद्दिजम् ।

यत्र धर्मस्त्वयैवार्थः कामस्त्वैवाभिवर्णितः ॥२६॥

But there is no agreement as regards the subsequent development except that in the *Mahābhārata* also *Brhaspati* is one of the authors of *Dandanīti* or *Arthasāstra*.

courtesans of Pātaliputra, wrote a separate treatise dealing with the *Vaiśika* section of Bābhravya. His example was followed by six other writers—*Cārāyaṇa*, *Suvarṇanābha*, *Ghoṭakamukha*, *Gonardiya*, *Gonikāputra* and *Kucumāra*, each of whom took up a section of Bābhravya and wrote a monograph on it. As the science treated in this fragmentary fashion by numerous writers was about to be mangled and spoiled and as the work of Bābhravya, being huge in bulk, was difficult to be mastered, Vātsyāyana proposes to give an epitome of the whole subject in a single work of moderate dimensions. Towards the end of the Kāmasūtra, again, Vātsyāyana says that having mastered the significance of the *sūtras* of Bābhravya (from his teachers, as one would do in the case of a sacred text or *āgama*) and having pondered over them in his mind, he composed the Kāmasūtra in the approved method.<sup>1</sup> He thus admits that the great work of Bābhravya formed the groundwork of his own book as is also quite evident from the frequent references that he makes to it in every part of his Kāmasūtra : one out of his seven sections, the *Sāmprayogika*, covering about a fourth part of the whole work, is entirely taken from Bābhravya, as he says at the end of that section.<sup>2</sup> There can, therefore, be no doubt that Vātsyāyana had before him the great work of Bābhravya *Pāñcāla*. The commentator also quotes several verses stating the opinions of the followers of Bābhravya, and about a *sūtra* of Vātsyāyana he observes that it is a verse of

1

बाब्रवीयांश्च सूत्रार्थान् आगमस्य विमृश्य च ।  
वात्स्यायनश्चकरेदं कामसूत्रं यथाविधि ॥

Kāmasūtra, Benares edition, p. 381.

2

एवमेतां चतुःषष्ठिं बाब्रव्येण प्रकीर्तिराम् ।

Benares edition, page 182. Besides, at pp. 63, 79, 94, 238, 273, 274, 298, 353, etc., the school of Bābhravya has been referred to.

*Vātsyāyana's Reference to Earlier Works on the Science of Love.*

In speaking of the origin of the *Kāmasāstra*, Vātsyāyana says at the beginning of his work<sup>1</sup> that at first, *Prajāpati*, the 'Lord of Beings,' for the welfare and preservation of his progeny composed a huge encyclopædia in a hundred thousand chapters dealing with the three objects of human life, *viz.*, *Dharma*, *Artha* and *Kāma*<sup>2</sup>; the first two of these subjects were next taken up by *Manu* and *Brhaspati* respectively and *Nandī* the attendant of Mahādeva, took up the third which he dealt with in a thousand chapters. This last work was condensed into five hundred chapters by *Śvetaketu*, the son of Uddālaka. The work of *Śvetaketu* was further abridged into a hundred and fifty chapters and divided into seven sections by *Bābhravya*, a native of the Pañcāla country. Next, *Dattaka*, at the request of the

1. *Vide* Chapter I of the *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 4-7 of the Benares edition. The quotations from the *Kāmasūtra* have been made throughout from the Benares edition, edited by Pandit Dāmodarālī Gosvāmī and published in the *Choukhamba Sanskrit Series* and the references are to the pages of this edition. The Sanskrit text edited by Mahāmahopādhyāya Pandit Durgāprasāda of Jaipur had been published earlier, but the Benares edition is more easily accessible to the public, the Jaipur edition being meant for private circulation alone. There is also a Bengali edition of the text and the commentary with a Bengali translation, published by Babu Maheś Chandra Pal of Calcutta. There is some difference in the arrangement of the chapters; otherwise the readings are much the same with only occasional variations.

2. This agrees with what is said in the *Mahābhārata*, *Sūntiparva*, Ch 59, with regard to the origin of the sciences. Here we are told that at the request of the gods who were filled with anxiety at the entire absence of discipline among mankind, Prajāpati Brahmā produced from his own intelligence a hundred thousand chapters in which were delineated *Dharma*—the science of religion and duty, *Artha*—the science of politics and economics and *Kāma*—the science of love.—

ततोऽव्यायसहस्राणां शतचक्रे स्वद्विजम् ।  
यत्र धर्मस्तथैवार्थः कामस्त्वैवाभिर्णितः ॥२६॥

But there is no agreement as regards the subsequent development except that in the *Mahābhārata* also Brhaspati is one of the authors of *Dandaniti* or *Arthasāstra*.

courtesans of Pātaliputra, wrote a separate treatise dealing with the *Vaiśīka* section of Bābhravya. His example was followed by six other writers—*Cārāyana*, *Suvarṇanābha*, *Ghoṭakamukha*, *Gonardiya*, *Gonikāputra* and *Kucumāra*, each of whom took up a section of Bābhravya and wrote a monograph on it. As the science treated in this fragmentary fashion by numerous writers was about to be mangled and spoiled and as the work of Bābhravya, being huge in bulk, was difficult to be mastered, Vātsyāyana proposes to give an epitome of the whole subject in a single work of moderate dimensions. Towards the end of the Kāmasūtra, again, Vātsyāyana says that having mastered the significance of the *sūtras* of Bābhravya (from his teachers, as one would do in the case of a sacred text or *āgama*) and having pondered over them in his mind, he composed the Kāmasūtra in the approved method.<sup>1</sup> He thus admits that the great work of Bābhravya formed the groundwork of his own book as is also quite evident from the frequent references that he makes to it in every part of his Kāmasūtra: one out of his seven sections, the *Sāmprayogika*, covering about a fourth part of the whole work, is entirely taken from Bābhravya, as he says at the end of that section.<sup>2</sup> There can, therefore, be no doubt that Vātsyāyana had before him the great work of Bābhravya Pāñcāla. The commentator also quotes several verses stating the opinions of the followers of Bābhravya, and about a *sūtra* of Vātsyāyana he observes that it is a verse of

1

ब्रह्मवीयांश्च सूत्रार्थान् आगमद्य विमृश्य च ।  
बात्स्यायनश्चकारेदं कामसूत्रं यथाविधि ॥

*Kāmasūtra*, Benares edition, p. 381.

2

एवमेतां चतुःष्टि बात्स्यायनं प्रकीर्तिताम् ।

Benares edition, page 182. Besides, at pp. 68, 79, 94, 238, 273, 274, 296, 353, etc. the school of Bābhravya has been referred to.

Bābhravya;<sup>1</sup> he seems, therefore, to have access to some treatise specially belonging to Bābhravya's school.

It may be noted that Vātsyāyana speaks of having treated Bābhravya's book like an āgama, a work of holy scripture, indicating that it was considerably ancient. A Bābhravya who is called Pañcāla by Uvāta, the commentator, is mentioned in the *Rk-pratisākhya* as the author of the *Krama-pāṭha* of the R̥gveda and Professor Weber<sup>2</sup> holds that this Bābhravya Pañcāla, and the Pañcāla people through him, took a leading part in fixing and arranging the text of the R̥gveda. The Mahābhārata also says that the author of the *Kramapāṭha* was a Pañcāla of the Bābhravya gotra and that his proper name was *Gālava*.<sup>3</sup> This connection of the Pañcāla people with the R̥gveda receives a confirmation from what Vātsyāyana tells us in connection with the sixty-four varieties of *Samprayoga* or connubial intercourse. He says that they belonged to the Pañcāla country and were

1. The Commentary (Ben. edn., p. 279) says, यथाहुर्भवीया:—

मुक्रिकां चिक्रहपाणि पश्चवः शुक्लसारिकाः ।  
सर्वे पां गृदभावानां दूतकर्माणि कुर्वत ॥ इति ।

Besides, the commentator quotes eight verses—*Bābhravyāḥ Ślokāḥ*—at pp. 37-38. Moreover, he introduces the sūtra शृतान्ते चुलं पुर्णं, etc. (p. 81) with the remark चमुमेवार्थं वाऽन्वयरीतेन शुद्धोकेनाह ।

2. *History of Indian Literature*, translated by J. Mann and T. Zacherise. Popular Edition, pp. 10 and 34.

3. *Mahābhārata*, Calcutta edition, *Sāntiparva*, ch. 342, vv. 102-104 and the Kumbhakonam, South Indian Recension, ch. 352, verses 37-38.

वामदेशितमार्गे या मतप्रसादान्महात्मना ॥  
पात्त्वालेन क्रमः प्राप्तस्त्वस्माद्भूतात् सनातनात् ।  
वाव्रम्योऽप्तः स वर्मो प्रथमं क्रमपात् ॥  
नारायणाहूरं लक्ष्मा प्राप योगमनुच्चमय् ।  
कर्म प्रशीय शिलान्च प्रश्नवित्वा स गात्रवः ॥

collectively called *Catuhshashṭi*<sup>1</sup>—"the sixty-four"—from analogy with the R̄gveda. He avers that the *R̄ks* collected in ten *mandalas* are called the *Catuhshashṭi* (being divided into eight *Ashtakas* of eight chapters each) and the same principle holds in the case of the *Samprayogas* too (as they are divided into eight times eight varieties); and besides, because they are both connected with the Pañcāla country, therefore, the Bahvrcas, the followers of the R̄gveda, have out of respect given this appellation of *Catuhshashṭi* to them.<sup>2</sup> It may be noted here that the followers of Bābhravya (Bābhravīyah) are mentioned in the *Mahābhāshya* (on Pānini I. 1) but we cannot be certain whether a Vedic school or a Kāmasāstra school is there meant. If Bābhravya, the author of the work on the *Kāmasāstra*, is the same as the great author of the *Kramapāṭha*, then he has to be placed in a very early age indeed. But Bābhravya is merely a *gotra* or family name and it may be doubted whether the science of erotics could have been systematized so early; though it must be admitted that erotics and eugenics, the sciences that the Kāmasūtra embraces in its scope, had received particular attention from the *R̄shis* at the time of composition of the hymns of the Atharvaveda, many of which deal with philtres and charms to secure love and drive away jealousy, with the means for obtaining good, healthy children and other allied matters.

The Pañcāla country where Bābhravya flourished appears to have been the part of India where the science of erotics was specially cultivated. We have seen how

<sup>1</sup> पञ्चालिकी चतुःष्टिरपरः ; Ben. ed. p. 40. संप्रयोगाङ्गः चतुःष्टिरित्याचक्षते चतुःष्टिप्रकरणत्वात् ; ibid. p. 92.

<sup>2</sup> शूची दशतयीनां च संज्ञितत्वादिहापि तदर्थसंबन्धात् फञ्चालसंबन्धाच वहूँचैरेवा पञ्चार्यं संज्ञा प्रवत्तितर्त्येके ॥ अष्टानामष्टाच विकल्पभेदादृष्टावष्टकश्चतुःष्टिरिति वाभवीयाः ; ibid. pp. 93-94.

great was the debt of Vātsyāyana to Bābhravya Pāñcāla, specially with regard to the section dealing with *Samprāyoga*, the subject-matter proper of the *Kāmasūtra*. Some of the most revolting ceremonies in the Aśvamedha sacrifice seem to have originated in the Pāñcāla country.<sup>1</sup> The Pāñcāla people were evidently credited in ancient times with special knowledge in matters relating to the sexes, and one of them is said to have changed even the natural sex, as we see in the case of Śikhandin, the son of the Pāñcāla king, Drupada.<sup>2</sup> Polyandry as we see it in the case of *Draupadī Pāñcāli*, may be regarded as an ancient institution of the Pāñcāla country and the Pāñdava brothers, belonging as they did, to the allied tribe of the Kurus, as we see from the common Vedic phrase *Kuru-Pañcāla*,<sup>3</sup> were certainly familiar with it and could have no difficulty in acceding to it; in fact, the Kurus of Hastināpura and the reigning dynasties in North and South Pāñcāla are said, in the Purāṇas, to belong to the same stock and to be descended from the same great ancestor Bharata.<sup>4</sup> In this connection, a statement of Vātsyāyana is very significant. He says that according to the followers of Bābhravya, who belonged to Pāñcāla, as we have seen, a woman's chastity may not be respected when she is found to have intimacy with five lovers<sup>5</sup> (in addition to her husband, explains the Commentary) showing that five was considered as the limit beyond which it was not proper for a woman to go; if she did so, she could be approached with impunity by any one. The Commentary explains that in the case of Draupadī this limit was not passed, as Yudhishthira and

1. See Weber, op. cit., pp. 114-115.

2. *Mahābhārata, Udyoga Parva* chh. 189-194.

3. See Macdonell and Keith, *Vedic Index*, i, pp. 165-169.

4. F. E. Pargiter, *North Pāñcāla Dynasty*, J. R. A. S. 1918, p. 238.

5. द्रौपद्युरुदा नागम्या काचिद्वतीति वाज्ञवीक्षा:, *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 68.

others were all her husbands.<sup>1</sup> The indulgence shown by the Pañcāla people to five lovers, appears to be significant. It is difficult to see in it a symbolic meaning as is done by Dahlmann.<sup>2</sup> It is worthy of remark in this connection that Āpastamba from whom, as we shall presently see, Vātsyāyana quotes several aphorisms, refers to the bestowal of a single woman in marriage to a whole family.<sup>3</sup>

Of the predecessors of Bābhravya mentioned by Vātsyāyana, the earlier ones appear to be mythical, but Śvetaketu, the son of Uddālaka, is better known. He is mentioned in the Mahābhārata as having established a fixity in sexual relations which before him were entirely free and promiscuous like those of the lower animals, the institution of marriage having not yet come into existence.<sup>4</sup> This refers to a primitive stage of society, and it is hardly possible, I am afraid, that this Śvetaketu Auddālaka could have been the author of the work in five hundred chapters referred to by Vātsyāyana. However, in the Chāndogyopanishad, and in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa<sup>5</sup> in the portion called the Brhadāraṇyakopanishad, we meet with a Śvetaketu who may be connected with the tradition of the authorship of a work relating to the Kamasāstra. Here we find three generations of Vedic teachers, Brāhmaṇas of Kurupāñcāla—Aruna,

1 स्वपतिव्यतिरेकेण दृष्टः पञ्च पुरुषा पतित्वेन यथा सा स्वरित्यां कारणवशात् सर्वे रेव गम्या । तथा च पञ्चातीता बन्धकीति पराशरः । द्वौपदी युविप्लिरादीनां स्वपतित्वाद् न्येचामगम्या । क्यमेका सत्यनेकपतिरिति चैतिहासिकाः प्रश्न्याः ; *ibid.* p. 68.

2 *Das Mahābhārata als Epos Und Rechtsbuch*, von J. Dahlmann, S. J., pp. 97-98.

3 कुलाय हि स्त्री प्रदोषत इत्यपदिशन्ति, *Ap. Dharma Sūtra*, II. 27. 3. See also Winteritz, *Notes on the Mahābhārata*. J. R. A. S., 1897, p. 758.

4 *Mahābhārata. Ādiparva*, ch. 121. Calcutta Edn.; अनादृता हि सर्वे चां वर्णानां मङ्ग्नां भुवि ॥ यथा गावः रिथतास्तात् स्वे स्वे वर्णे तथा प्रजाः । इश्वित्रोऽथ ते धर्मं शेषतेतुर्ण चक्रमे ॥ चकार चैव स्त्र्यादाभिमां स्त्रीपुस्योभुवि ।- मानुषेषु महाभागे न त्वेवान्येषु जन्मनुषु ॥ See also Kumbakonam edn., ch. 128.

5 *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*, x. 6. 1. 1. He is also referred to in two places in the *Taittiriya Saṁhitā*. vi. 1. 9. 2 and 4, 5. 1.

his son *Uddālaka Āruṇi*, and his grandson, *Śvetaketu* *Auddālaki Āruṇeya*.<sup>1</sup> A story is told in almost the same words in both the Chāndogya as well as the Brhadāraṇyaka Upanishads<sup>2</sup> how the young Śvetaketu, after finishing his education, went to the assembly (*śamiti* or *parishad*) of the Pañcāla people and was there discomfitted by some questions put to him by Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, a Kshattriya ; he was mortified at thus being nonplussed by a mere Rājanya and complained to his father who also being unable to answer the questions, sought Pravāhaṇa Jaivali himself for being taught in the matters broached by him. Among the matters taught by this Kshattriya of Pañcāla we find a symbolic interpretation of the relations between the sexes.<sup>3</sup> A few chapters later in the *Brhadāraṇyakopanishad*,<sup>4</sup> we find the same thing related with further additions including rules for approaching a woman, for dealing with a lover of one's own wife and specially rules for obtaining good progeny, and Uddālaka Āruṇi is there referred to as one of the foremost teachers of this science<sup>5</sup> which represents some of the earliest attempts made in India for the discovery of eugenic laws. These matters were afterwards more fully developed in the Gṛhyasūtras but the beginnings were made in the Upanishads, and, in fact, Āśvalāyana in his Gṛhyasūtra refers to the *upanishad* or the secret lore as the proper source in these things.<sup>6</sup> It is

1 *Chānd. Up.*, V. 3. 1. ; VI. 8. 1. *Satap. Br. Māndhyandina Text*, x. 3. 4. 1. xi. 4. 1. 1. ; xi. 6. 2. 1. ; xii. 2. 1. 9. etc.

2 *Chānd. Up.* Adhyāya V. Khandas iii-x. specially Khandas viii and ix ; *Brhad Up.* VI. 2 1 ff.

3 योवा वा अप्निर्गतेतम तस्या उपस्थ पूर्व समिल्लोमानि धूमो योनिरचिंदन्तः करोति तेऽङ्गरा अभिनन्दा विस्फुलिंगास्तस्मिन्नेतस्मिन्नां देवा रेतो जुहवति तस्या आदुत्यै पुरुषः संभवति स जीवति यावज्जीवत्यथ यदु ग्रियते । *Brh. Up.* VI. 2 13.

4 *Brh. Up.*, VI. 4. 3. ff.

5 पूर्वस्थ वै तद्विद्वान् उदासक आरुणिराह ; *Brh. Up.* VI. 4. 4.

6 अप्निर्गति गर्भसम्भवं पूर्वस्थमवस्थामनं च ; *Āśvalāyana, Gṛhyasūtra*, I. 13 1.

significant that both Pravāhana Jaivali and Uddālaka, of the Upanishad story, belonged to the Pañcāla country where, as we have seen before, the Kāmasāstra was specially cultivated. From what we have said above, it is evident that Uddālaka considerably advanced the science the rudiments of which he had received from Pravāhana Jaivali, and his son, Śvetaketu, must have carried it still farther as is evident from the body of tradition that has accumulated round his name as the first human founder of the Kāmasāstra which appears to have been specially studied in his family. There can be no doubt that Śvetaketu and his father were historical personages and lived in a highly cultured age, an age of intense philosophical speculation, as we see from the many stories connected with them in the Brāhmaṇas and the Upanishads and it is not improbable that he had composed an *Upanishad* or secret work in which matters relating to marriage, love and the begetting of children were specially dealt with ; at any rate, a body of eugenic rules of which a few fragments have been preserved in the Brhadāraṇyakopanishad, must have come down from him and his family. That Śvetaketu left behind him some such work may be gathered from the fact that a personal statement by him has been quoted by Āpastamba in his *Dharmasūtra* where Śvetaketu is represented as having said that even after his marriage he carried on Vedic studies at his teacher's house for two months every year and thus acquired a greater knowledge of the *Śruti* than before,<sup>1</sup> and we may note that this passage which seems to be a direct quotation from Śvetaketu, has not been traced as yet in any of the Vedic works where he is referred to. Āpastamba further states, in another chapter, that though Śvetaketu was a

१ निवेशे वृत्ते संवत्सरे संवत्सरे द्वौ द्वौ मासौ समाहित आचार्यकुसे वसेद् भूतः  
श्रुतिमिळ्ळन्ति श्वेतकेतुः । एतेन द्वाहं योगेन भूयः पूर्वमातृ कालाच्छुतमकुर्वोति,  
Āpastamba Dh. Sūtras I. 1. 13, 19 and 20.

person belonging to a comparatively recent age, yet he had become a Ṛshi.<sup>1</sup> Coming back to Vātsyāyana we find that the opinions of Auddālaki are referred to by Vātsyāyana in three places<sup>2</sup> in his Kāmasūtra and in one of them he contrasts the opinions of Auddālaki and Bābhravya, thus proving the connection of Auddālaki with the Kāmasāstra beyond any doubt. It does not, however, necessarily imply that Vātsyāyana had access to Auddālaki's work in five hundred chapters, as in that case he would have made ampler use of it; certain opinions must have been current in Vātsyāyana's time among the teachers of the Kāmasāstra (whom he frequently refers to as the *Ācāryas*), as having come down from the reputed human founder of the science; or, the legend of Auddālaki and his opinions might have been taken from the work of Bābhravya on whom Vātsyāyana mainly depends.

The monographs written by the successors of Bābhravya,—Dattaka and others—are quoted by Vātsyāyana in the respective chapters of his book. Dattaka's book on the courtesans appears to have been in use in the eighth century A.C. when Dāmodaragupta wrote his *Kuṭṭanīmatam*, and it may have been availed of by the commentator who quotes a *sūtra* of Dattaka where Vātsyāyana has translated

<sup>1</sup> अत्यधिक भवन्ति केचित् कर्मफलशेषेण सुनः सम्भवे श्वेतकेतुः; *ibid* I, 2, 5 and 5. See Buhler, S. B. E. II, pp. xxxviii and xlvi.

<sup>2</sup> क्यमेतदुपलभ्यते इति चेत् पुरुषो हि रतिमधिगम्य स्वेच्छया विरमति, नह्यत्य-  
भवेत्तरे। तत्वेव स्त्रीत्यौद्यालकिः; *Kāmasūtra*, Bon. ed., p. 76: नासंस्तुता दृष्टाकार्यी-  
र्दृष्ट्यमस्तीत्यौद्यालकिः; *ibid.* p. 273; इत्यौद्यालकेरुभ्यतोयोगाः; *ibid.* p. 353. The  
commentator refers (*ibid.*, pp. 74, 78) two of Vātsyāyana's sūtras to Auddālaki,  
evidently from the context.

<sup>3</sup> वात्सायनमवधं वाहान् द्रूपेण दत्तकाचार्यान्।

गणयति मन्मथतन्त्रे पशुतुलयं रेजपुत्रं च ॥

वात्सायन-मदनोदय-दत्तक-विद्युत्-राजपुत्रादौः ।

चक्षुपितं यत्रकिञ्चित्तत्स्या हृदयदेशमध्यास्ते ॥

—verses 77 and 122 in *Kuṭṭanīmatam* in  
Kāvya-māla, Gucchaka III.

the substance of it.<sup>1</sup> Of the other writers, Gonardiya has been quoted by Mallinātha in his gloss on Kumāra-sambhava, VII, 95, and on Raghuvamśa, XIX, 29, 30.

Rājaśekhara in his *Kāvyaśāstra*<sup>2</sup> refers to *Suvarṇanābha* as the author of a treatise on a branch of poetics, viz., *Ritimirāya* and speaks of *Kucamāra* as having dealt with the *Aupanishadika* section. The latter is evidently the same as Vātsyāyana's *Kucumāra*, the author of a monograph on the *Aupanishadika* portion of the Kāmasāstra, and most probably one and the same work has been referred to by the two authors, there being nothing extraordinary in the fact that the sections dealing with the secrets and mysteries (*upanishad*) of both poetics and erotics should coalesce.<sup>3</sup> Kauṭilya in the Arthasāstra has quoted a *Dīrgha Cārāyaṇa* and *Ghoṭamukha* who, as Professor Jacobi holds,<sup>4</sup> are probably the same persons as the Cārāyaṇa and Ghoṭakamukha of Vātsyāyana; they would therefore have lived prior to the fourth century B. C. and Dattaka and Bābhravya who preceded them must be thrown back to a much earlier date. Dattaka, of course, could not have lived earlier than the fifth century B.C. when Pātaliputra became the capital of Magadha. Gonikāputra is mentioned by Patañjali in the *Mahābhāshya* as a former grammarian<sup>5</sup> and Professor Jacobi is inclined to

1 “भागदसंप्लवे विशिष्टाहृष्णमिति” दत्तकसूत्रम्, अस्य स्पष्टार्थं सूत्रान्तरमाह—प्रतिगायिकानामिति : *ibid*, p. 321.

2 *Kāvyaśāstra*, edited by C. D. Dalai and R. A. Shastri. Gaekwad's Oriental Series, p. 1.—रीतिनिश्चयं सुवर्णनामः, \*\*\* औपतिषदिकं कुचमार ( समाप्ननासीत् ) इति ।

3 The *Kuchimāra-tantram* edited by Mathurāprasāda Dikshita. Lahore, 1922, claims to give the substance of *Kucimītra*'s *Upanishad*. संयोगादिटसेनाशादुपक्षब्लवत्त्वतः १ कुचिमरेण तपसा यत्कृतं क्रीडनं पुरा ॥ तत् प्रवक्ष्यामि चित्रार्थं नानार्थपदं निरिचतम् । श्री यतां नामतत्त्वे कुचोपनिषदं पुनः ॥ Verses 2 and 3. p. 1.

4 ‘तुष्टमिति’ दीर्घच्चारायणः । ‘श्रीता शाटीति’ घोटमुखः । *Arthasāstra*, ed. R. Shama Sastri, 2nd edition, p. 258.

5 *Sitzung. Konigl. Preus. Akad. d. Wissenschaften*, 1911, pp. 959-963.

6 अये ह कथं भवितव्यं नेताशस्य चुच्छन्मित्याहोस्त्विनेताशस्य चुच्छस्येति । इभयथा गोविकापुत्रः—*Mahābhāshya* on Pāṇini, I. 4. 51.

believe that he is the same person as the Gonikāputra of Vātsyāyana. But in his case, as also in that of Gonardiya, the identification is rather doubtful as grammar and erotics are not very allied subjects. The works of Bā-bhravya and Goniputraka, who must be the same as our Gonikāputra, as well as that of Vātsyāyana, appear to have been used by Jyotirīśvara Thakkura while composing his *Pañcasāyaka*,<sup>1</sup> a work on erotics which was written in Mithilā by the end of the thirteenth century, the author being considered to be the great-grand-father of the celebrated poet, Vidyāpati who flourished in the middle of the fourteenth century A.C.

*The Upper Limit of the Date of Vātsyāyana from  
the Authors quoted by him*

Vātsyāyana has quoted freely from the works of earlier authors not only in his own subject, but in other departments of Sanskrit literature as well. But while he has taken care to mention the authorities whom he cites and discusses when referring to his predecessors in the science of erotics, in the other cases he has not cared to acknowledge his debt by mentioning the sources. Some of them may, however, be indicated, and we shall be enabled thereby to fix a *terminus a quo* for him on literary grounds.

There is a wonderful agreement between Vātsyāyana and the *Kalpasūtra* of Āpastamba. In Chapter I on the selection of a bride (*Varana-vidhāna-prakaraṇam*) the *Kāmasūtra*

1. उत्तम ग्रन्थतन्त्रमीश्वरमतं वात्स्यायनीयं मसं  
गोषीपुत्रक-सूसदेवभक्षितं वाभूष्यवाक्याभूतम् ।  
श्रीमद्वीश्वर-रन्तिदेवभक्षितं क्षेमेन्द्रविद्यागमं  
तेनाक्षम्यत पश्चायक इति पूर्वित्पूर्वः कामिनाम् ॥

*Pañcasāyaka* edited by Sadiñanda Sāstri. Lahore, p. 2; see also R. Schmidt, *Beiträge zur Indischen Erotik*, p. 50.

2. Dr. Hoernle, *Comparative Grammar of the Gaudian Languages*, p. xxxv.

has सुसां रुदतीं निष्कान्तां वरणे परिवर्जयेत्.<sup>1</sup> This is exactly the same as that given by Āpastamba in his Grhya-Sūtra, I. 3. 10.<sup>2</sup> The next two *sūtras* show only slight modifications, but making allowance for differences in reading they are exactly identical. Vātsyāyana has<sup>3</sup> :

गुसां दत्तां घोनां पृष्ठामृष्टभां विनतां विकटां विमुण्डां शुचिदूषितां  
सांकरिकों राकां फलिनीं मित्रां स्वनुजां वर्षकरों च वर्जयेत्।  
नक्षत्रास्थां नदीनाम्नीं वृक्षनाम्नीं च गहिंताम्।  
लकाररेफोपान्तां च वरणे परिवर्जयेत्॥

Āpastamba reads :—

दत्तां गुसां घोनां पृष्ठामृष्टभां शरभां विनतां विकटां मुण्डां मङ्गूषिकां  
सांकरिकां रातां पालों मित्रां स्वनुजां वर्षकारीं च वर्जयेत्॥ ११॥  
नक्षत्रनामा नदीनामा वृक्षनामाश्च गहिंताः॥ १२॥

सर्वाश्च रेफलकारोपान्ता वरणे परिवर्जयेत्॥ १३॥

The next *sūtra* of Vātsyāyana again reads exactly the same as Āpastamba's Grhyasūtra, I. 3. 20. यस्यां मनश्चक्षुष्वा-  
र्त्तिवन्धस्तस्यामृदिने तरामाद्रियेतेत्येके.<sup>4</sup>

The first *sūtra* of the next chapter of the Kāmasūtra is again the same as in Āpastamba's Grhyasūtra, III. 8. 8. The Kāmasūtra has संगतयोस्त्विरात्रमधःशश्या ब्रह्मचर्यः क्षारलवणं वर्जमाहारः ; Āpastamba reads विरातमुभयोरधःशश्या ब्रह्मचर्यः क्षारलवणवर्जनं च.<sup>5</sup>

About the sources of the *Dharma* also, Vātsyāyana shows a wonderful agreement with Āpastamba, but this time with his Dharmasūtra. Vātsyāyana after giving a definition of Dharma says that it should be learnt from the Vedas and from the assembly of those who know the

1 Benares edition, p. 187.

2 The Āpastambiya Grhyasūtra, edited by Dr. M. Winteritz, p. 4.

3 Ben. ed., pp. 187-188.

4 Winteritz, Ap. Gr. Sūtra p. 4.

5 Kāmasūtra, Ben. ed., p. 188, and Winteritz, Ap. Gr. S., p. 5.

6 Kāmasūtra, Ben. ed., p. 191; Winteritz, Ap. Gr. S., p. 11.

*Dharma*, : just as he says that the Kāmasūtra should be learnt from the books on the subject and the assembly of the citizens.<sup>2</sup> Āpastamba says much the same thing in his Dharmasūtra.<sup>3</sup>

In another chapter, Vātsyāyana quotes a verse referring it simply to the *Smṛti*<sup>4</sup> (*smṛtitāk*)—

वस्तः प्रस्तुवने मेध्यः श्वा सुग्रहणे शुचिः ।  
शकुनिः फलपाते तु स्त्रीमुखं रतिसंगमे ॥

This verse is found in the Dharmasūtras of *Vasishtha*<sup>5</sup> and *Baudhāyana*<sup>6</sup> with very slight and immaterial variations. With some further modifications it is found in the Samhitās of *Manu* and *Vishṇu* also. Its occurrence in almost identical forms in so many works shows that it must have been borrowed from some common and ancient authority on *Dharma*. Again, in a verse in his chapter on marriage, Vātsyāyana shows an agreement in idea with *Baudhāyana*. Vātsyāyana says that as mutual affection between a couple is the object of all forms of marriage, therefore the *Gāndharva* form which has its basis in love, is easier to celebrate,

1 तं अतेर्पर्मङ्गसमवायाच्च प्रतिपद्यते—*Benares Edition*, p. 13.

2 तं कामसूत्रान्नाग्रतिक्षमसमवायाच्च प्रतिपद्यते, *ibid.* p. 15.

3 Āpastambiya *Dharma Sūtra* edited by Dr. G. Buhler, C. I. E., p. 1 :—

अथातः सामयाचारिकान्धर्मान् व्यास्त्वास्त्वामः ॥ धर्मङ्गसमयः प्रामाण्यम् । वेदास्त्वः ॥

4 *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 167.

5 *The Vasishtha Dharma-Sāstram*, edited by Dr. A. A. Fuhrer, ch. 28. 8, p. 77.

6 *The Bodhāyana Dharma Sūtram* edited by L. Srinivāsāchārya, Mysore, 1, 5, 49, p. 57. Bodhāyana reads :

वस्तः प्रस्तुवने मेध्यः शकुनिः फलशातने ।

स्त्रियरच रतिसंगमे श्वा सुग्रहणे शुचिः ॥

7. *Manava Dharmaśāstra*, edited by Dr. J. Jolly, V. 130.

नित्यमास्यं शुचिः स्त्रीशार्दं शकुनिः फलपातने ।

प्रस्तुवे च शुचिर्वत्सः श्वा सुग्रहणे शुचिः ॥

8 *Vishṇusmṛti*, edited by Dr. J. Jolly, XXIII. 49.

and is free from the technicalities of a long wooing, is the best of all<sup>1</sup> and Baudhāyana refers to this as the opinion of some authorities.<sup>2</sup> This idea we also find in the *Mahābhārata*.<sup>3</sup> From the above, it is clear that Vātsyāyana has embodied in his work at least five *sūtras* from the *Grhyasūtra* of Āpastamba, though we cannot feel quite certain with regard to his debt to Baudhāyana. We are not quite sure about the date of these *sūtra* works, but the period to which this Vedic literature belonged, is supposed to have extended to about 500 B.C.<sup>4</sup>

Next, we find that Vātsyāyana has embodied in his book a considerable number of passages from a work whose date is more definitely known, viz., from the *Arthaśāstra* of Kauṭilya<sup>5</sup> which is now generally considered to have been written about 300 B.C., and he has followed the method of Kauṭilya throughout the *Kāmasūtra*. This has led to the absurd identification of Kauṭilya with Vātsyāyana and a host of other authors in some of the *Koshas* or lexicons.<sup>6</sup>

1 *Kāmasūtra*. Benares edition. 223.

व्याधानां हि विवाहानां भनुरागः फलं यतः ।  
मध्यमोऽपि हि सद्योगो गान्धर्वस्तेन पूजितः ॥  
सखत्वादव्युक्ते शादपि चावरयादिह ।  
अनुरागात्मकत्वाच्च गान्धर्वः प्रवरो मतः ॥

2 *Baudhāyana*. Mysore edition, 1, 11. 16. p. 137.

गान्धर्वमप्येके प्रशंसन्ति सर्वे वां स्नेहानुग्रहत्वात् ॥

3 विवाहानां हि रम्भोरु गान्धर्वः श्रेष्ठ उच्यते—*Mahābhārata*, *Ādiparva* ch. 73, verse 4, and ch. 172, v. 19.

4 Winteritz, *Geschichte der indischen Litteratur*, Bd. I, pp. 246—253.

5 Mr. R. Shāmashāstry has brought together a number of parallel passages in the *Arthaśāstra* and *Kāmasūtra*; see his *Arthaśāstra*, second edition, pp. xii-xvi.

6 In the *Modern Review*, March, 1918, p. 274, Mr. Sriś Chandra Vasu Vidyārṇava quotes the following verse from the *Abhidhāraṇitāmāṇi*—

दातस्यायनो महुनागः कुटिलश्वकात्मजः ।  
द्रामिलः पश्चिमस्वामी विष्णुपुरीऽङ्गुष्ठच सः ॥

See also, *A Note on the Supposed Identity of Vātsyāyana and Kauṭilya*, by Mr. R. Shāmashāstry, in the *Journal of the Mythic Society*, Vol. vi, pp. 210-216.

Coming down to still later times, we observe that Vātsyāyana quotes from the *Mahābhāshya* of Patañjali. The latter observes with regard to unavoidable faults or defects in grammatical definitions, that simply because certain defects cannot be avoided, one should certainly not desist from formulating rules of interpretation (*paribhāshās*) or from giving a definition, just as one does not refrain from cooking his food merely because there are beggars to ask for a share of it, nor from sowing barley-grains simply for the reason that when the plants grow up there may be deer to destroy the corn. Vātsyāyana says the very same thing in exactly the same language with regard to defects inherent in *Kāma* or desire.<sup>1</sup> This quotation from the *Mahābhāshya* brings down the upper limit of the date of Vātsyāyana to the second half of the second century B.C., in round numbers to circa 150 B.C.

Besides the above, there are many references to narrative literature in Vātsyāyana's Kāmasūtra. In one passage,<sup>2</sup> he says that when a girl shows some signs of listening favourably to the proposals of a lover, she should be propitiated by reciting to her such stories as those of *Ahalyā*, *Arimāraka* and *Śakuntala*. The story of *Ahalyā* is given in the Rāmāyaṇa about the date of which, however, there is much controversy; but *Ahalyā* is also alluded to by Aśvaghoṣa in *Buddhacarita*.<sup>3</sup> *Avimāraka*'s story forms the subject matter of one of the dramas of Bhāsa whom some scholars have placed

1 न हि दोषाः सन्तीति परिभाषा न कर्तव्यं लक्षणं वा न प्रणेयम् । न हि भिज्ञकाः सन्तीति स्थाप्यतो नाचित्रीयन्ते । न च मृगाः सन्तीति यवा नोप्यन्ते । *Mahābhāshya* on Pāṇini, I, 1, 39. Vātsyāyana has बोद्धव्यं हि दोषेष्विव, न हि भिज्ञकाः सन्तीति, etc. (Beu ed., p. 25); the rest is exactly the same.

2 शूद्रपत्न्यां चाहल्याऽविमारक-शाकुन्तलादोन्यन्यान्यपि सौकिकानि च कथयेत् द्युक्तानि । Benares edition, p. 271.

3

कामं परमिति ज्ञात्वा देवोऽपि हि पुरंदरः ।  
गौतमस्य दुनैः पत्नीमहस्यां चक्मे पुरा ॥

*Buddhacarita*, IV, 72

about the middle of the first century B. C. while others would assign him to the third century A. C.<sup>1</sup> In any case there could not have been much distance in time between Bhāsa and Vātsyāyana because we find pictured in the works of the dramatist a state of society very closely resembling that depicted in the Kāmasūtra. We cannot be sure, however, that Vātsyāyana derived the story of Avimāraka from the drama because Bhāsa's treatment of it seems to indicate that it was a well-known story like that of Udayana; and, besides, the commentary, Jayamaṅgalā, gives some particulars that are wanting in the drama.

The story of Śakuntalā is referred to by Vātsyāyana in another place also. In his chapter on the courtship of a maiden, he says that the wooer should point out to the girl courted the cases of other maidens like Śakuntalā who situated in the same circumstances as herself obtained husbands of their own free choice and were happy by such union.<sup>2</sup> This refers to the story of the love between Śakuntalā and Dushmanta as we know it from the great drama of Kalidāsa, but Vātsyāyana was certainly not indebted to him for it; it is given very fully in the Mahābhārata.<sup>3</sup> Aśvaghosha in the *Buddha-carita* also narrates how Viśvāmitra, Śakuntalā's father, was led astray by an Apsaras whom, however, he calls *Gṛtāci* instead of *Menakā*; in his *Saundarananda-kāvya* also, the same author speaks of Kanva who brought up Bharata, the son of Śakuntalā, and he says further that the young son of Dushmanta displayed great skill in

1. Mr. K. P. Jayaswal (J. A. S.-B., 1913, p. 265) has advanced the first view while Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar (Carmichael Lectures, 1918, p. 59) supports the second one.

2. याग्नवान्या अपि समानजातीयाः कन्याः शकुन्तलाद्याः स्वबुद्धा भर्तारं प्राप्य संप्रयुक्ता मोदन्ते स्म ताइचास्या निर्दर्शयेत्, *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 278.

3. *Ādiपुरा*, ch. 68 ff.

sporting with the beasts of the forest.<sup>1</sup> In his *Sutrālankāra* again, Aśvaghosha speaks of Bharata as one of the great kings of India.<sup>2</sup> He was evidently well acquainted with the story of Śakuntalā. The *Kaṭṭhahāri Jātaka* certainly reminds us of the story of Dushmanta and Śakuntalā.<sup>3</sup> The legend, however, was known in still more ancient times, *viz.*, the period of the composition of the Brāhmaṇa portion of the Vedas. While we observe that Śakuntalā's mother, Menakā is known as an *apsaras* in both the White and Black Yajurvedas,<sup>4</sup> Śakuntalā herself is spoken of in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa<sup>5</sup> as having borne at Nādapiṭe the great Bharata who is also called there the son of Duḥshanta, and even the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa quotes the legend as having been sung in

1 विवामितो महर्षिश्च विगादोऽपि महस्याः ।

दयवर्णोदयरयस्यो धृताच्यापसरसा हतः ॥

*Buddhacarita*, IV. 20.

करवः शाकुन्तलस्येव भरतस्य तरस्त्विनः ।

*Saundarananda Kārya*, I. 26.

जिह्वासमाना नागेषु कौशलं श्वापदेषु च ।

अनुच्छक वनस्थस्य दौधमन्ते दैवकम्मणः ॥ *Ibid.* I. 36

2 *Sutrālankāra* traduit en François sur la version Chinoise par Edouard Huber, p. 395.

3 Fauboll's *Jātaka* Vol. I, No. 7. This has been pointed out by Signor P. E. Pavolini in the *Giornale della Società Asiatica Italiana*, Vol. Ventesimo, p. 297. See also note by Mr. R. Chalmers in his English translation of the First Volume of the *Jātakas*, p. 20.

4 मेनका च सहजन्या चापु सरसौ—*Vājasaneyi-Saṃhitā*, xv. 16; *Taitt. Saṃ.*, 4. 4.  
3. 1 *Maitrāyaṇi Saṃ.*, II. 8. 10.

5 XIII. 5. 4. 11. 13, 14.

एतद् विष्णोः क्रान्तम् । तेनैतम् भरतो दौःवन्तिरीजे तेनेष्वेमां व्यष्टिं व्यानशे येयं  
भरतानां तदेतद् गाथयाभिगीतमष्टासप्तसंति भरतो दौःवन्तियमुनामनु गङ्गायां दृतृष्णे उवज्ञात्  
पञ्चपञ्चाहर्त इवानिति । अथ तृतोयया । शुकुन्तला नाडपित्यपसरा भरतं दृष्टे परः  
सहस्रान्निन्द्रायाश्वान्मेध्यान् य आहरद्विजित्य पृथिवीं सव्वामिति । अथ चतुर्थ्या । महद्य  
भरतस्य न पूर्वे नापरे जनाः । दिवं मर्त्ये इति बाहुभ्यां नोदाषुः पञ्च मानवा इति ।

6. Harisvāmin, the commentator, explains that the hermitage of Kanya where Śakuntalā was nurtured, was called Nādapiṭe. See the English translation by J. Eggeling of the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, Part v, p. 399, foot-note 2.

gāthās<sup>1</sup> connected with the great hero who gave his name to the whole continent of *Bharatavarsha*; so that the legend appears to belong to the earliest stock of legends of the Indian Aryans.

Besides the above mention of certain well-known stories, there are many references throughout the work of Vātsyāyana to love-stories in general, showing that story-telling was very popular in the days of our author; and when we are reminded that the enormous mass of narratives in the *Mahācastu*, *Dīcyadradaṇa* and *Āśvaghosha*'s *Sūtralankāra* on the one hand, and the *Sānti* and *Anusāsana Parvas* of the *Mahābhārata* on the other, as well as those in the *Tantrikhyayika*, were mostly embodied in their present form about the early centuries of the Christian era, we feel inclined to think that it was in this period when narrative literature flourished most in India, that his treatise on love was composed by Vātsyāyana who found the recital of love-stories the readiest means of rousing the tender passion in the hearts of maids and swains.

*The Lower Limit of the Date of Vātsyāyana from References to Kāmasūtra in later Literature.*

We may now proceed to fix the *terminus ad quem* for the date of Vātsyāyana from an examination of the

1 The Gāthās are quoted in a fairly large number in the Brāhmaṇas and the Vedic literature generally, and they are referred to in the earliest portions of the *Rigveda* itself (1. 190, 1, etc.). For the most part, these Gāthās contain historical matter singing about the mighty deeds of great heroes in still older times, as we see from the Gāthās quoted above chanting the great achievements of the eponymous hero Bharata. The *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* (VII. 18) makes a distinction between the *R̥ks* and the Gāthās, saying that the former refer to the Gods and the latter to men. It is no wonder that with the Aryan Indians who placed spiritual concerns far above the temporal from the very earliest times, the literature dealing with the deeds of mere men fell into comparative neglect and was not preserved with the same care as was bestowed upon the *R̥ks*, though occasional verses were preserved in memory and transmitted orally.

references to his work in later literature, and for this purpose we shall take into account only those that will be immediately helpful to us. In the first place we observe that the great Kālidāsa was well acquainted with the Kāmasūtra. In describing the dalliance of the voluptuary Agnivarṇa who reminds us so much of the Kānya Devabhūti, Kālidāsa has often followed in Canto XIX of the *Raghuvamśa*, the description in the Kāmasūtra, using even its technical expressions, *e. g.*, the word *sandhayaḥ* which is used in verse 16 in the very same sense as that given by Vātsyāyana in his chapter on *Viśirṇapratisandhāna*.<sup>1</sup> In verse 31, however, there is a more definite and verbal agreement. Vātsyāyana in his chapter on the means of knowing a lover who is growing cold (*Virakta-pratipatti*) gives as one of the indications of such a one मित्रकृत्यमपदिश्य अन्यत्र शेते.<sup>2</sup> Kālidāsa in describing Agnivarṇa under similar circumstances uses the very same language—मित्रकृत्यमपदिश्य पार्श्वतः प्रस्थितं तमनवस्थितं प्रियाः. Another very striking agreement has been pointed out by Mallinātha and dilated upon by modern scholars. Describing the marriage of Aja and Indumati, Kālidāsa says that when the two touched each other's hands, the hair on the bridegroom's forearm stood on end and the maiden had her fingers wet with perspiration.<sup>3</sup> Here Mallinātha quotes Vātsyāyana who speaks exactly the same thing happening under the same circumstances.<sup>4</sup> In *Kumārasambhava* VII. 77, however, Kālidāsa has

1 *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 327 ff.

2 This is the reading given by Mallinātha. The *Kāmasūtra* reads मित्रकार्यमपदिश्य, etc., Ben. ed. p. 323.

3 आसीद्वृः क्षाटक्षितप्रकोष्ठः स्विकाङ्गुलिः संवृते कुमारी ।

4 “कन्या तु प्रथमसमागमे स्विकाङ्गुलिः स्विकाङ्गुली च भवति । युरुपलु रोमाञ्चितो भवति ; एुभिनयोर्भवं परीक्षते ।” This passage, quoted by Mallinātha, is slightly different from the reading in the printed editions of the *Kāmasūtra* where we have स्विकाङ्गुलाङ्गुलिः स्विकाङ्गुली च भवति, Benares edition, p. 266.

reversed this order, saying that it was Hara, the bridegroom, who perspired and the hair stood on end on the bride's hand.<sup>1</sup> But the language is almost the same and we think Kālidāsa's memory did not serve him quite right when he wrote the Kumārasambhava passage and that he improved himself, as Professor Jacobi holds, in the Raghuvamśa. The violation in the one case only proves more strongly that Kālidāsa had a knowledge of Vātsyāyana's work and made use of it. Arguing from a similar agreement in another passage of Kālidāsa, Dr. Peterson has come to the definite conclusion that Vātsyāyana is quoted there by the poet. He refers to the following verse ( in Act IV ) which is considered to be one of the best in his *Abhijñāna Śakuntalam*.<sup>2</sup>

शशू षष्ठ गुरुन् कुरु प्रियसखीवृत्तं सपत्नीजने  
 भृत्युविंप्रकृतापि रोषणतया मास्म प्रतीपं गमः ।  
 भूयष्टं भव दक्षिणा परिज्ञने भोगेष्वनुत्सेकिनी  
 यान्त्येवं गृहिणीपदं युवतयो वामा कुलस्याधयः ॥

Dr. Peterson then goes on to say : "The first, third and fourth precepts here are taken verbally from one *sūtra*, the second occurs elsewhere in our book ; the third we have already had. Scholars must judge : but it seems to me to be almost certain that Kālidāsa is quoting Vātsyāyana, a fact, if it be a fact, which invests our author with great antiquity."<sup>3</sup> It will be observed from an examination of the corresponding *sūtras* of Vātsyāyana<sup>4</sup> that in

रोमोदगमः प्रादुरभूतमायाः स्त्रियाङ्गः लिः पुङ्गवकेतुसीत् ।

2 Die Epen Kālidāsa's, p. 155. In this connection see R. Schmidt, *Beiträge Zur Indischen Erotik*, 1902, pp. 4-5.

3 Kālidāsa's Śakuntalā, the Bengali Recension, edited by Richard Pischel, p. 89.

4 *Journal of the Anthropological Society of Bomhay*, 1891, p. 465 ; see also J. B. B. A. S., Vol. XXVIII, pp. 109-110.

5 Dr. Peterson here evidently refers to the following *sūtras* of Vātsyāyana on the duties of a wife : शशू षष्ठ गुरुपरिच्छर्व्या तत्पारतन्त्रमनुत्तरवादिता, etc. भोगेष्वनुत्सेकः परिज्ञने दक्षिणम् ॥ Benares edition, p. 230. Vātsyāyana devotes the whole of Chapter

the first two lines of the verse quoted above, Kālidāsa has translated the ideas of Vātsyāyana but in the third line he has followed our author verbally. On the authority of this agreement evidently Mahāmahopādhyāya Hara Prasād Sāstri has also expressed the opinion that Kālidāsa's "knowledge of the Kāmaśāstra was very deep indeed."<sup>1</sup> Dushmanta's words in Act V of Śakuntalā—'नागरकवृत्या शान्तयैनाम्' shows that Kālidāsa has used the word *nāgaraka* there in the full sense imparted to it by Vātsyāyana in his section called *Nāgarakavṛttam*, viz., a city-bred man skilled in speech and love-making. There is moreover, a set of *sūtras* in Vātsyāyana's chapter on *Kanyāvisrambha* which reminds the reader at once of the first act of Kālidāsa's Śakuntalā as will be seen from the translation here given : "When a girl sees that she is sought after by a desirable lover, conversation should be set up through a sympathetic friend (*sakhī*) who has the confidence of both ; then she should smile with head bent down ; when the *sakhī* exaggerates matters, she should take her to task and quarrel with her ; the *sakhī*, however, should say in jest, 'This was said by her,' even when she has not done so ; then when the *sakhī* is set aside and she is solicited to speak for herself, she should keep silent ; when, however, this is insisted upon, she should mutter sweetly, 'O no ! I never say any such thing' in indistinct and half-finished sentences ; and she should, with a smile, cast occasional side-long glances at the lover, etc."<sup>2</sup> From what we have said above, there can be no doubt that the Kāmasūtra was known to Kālidāsa and that he

III of the *Bhāryādhikārika* section to the mutual conduct of co-wives (p. 224ff.). Corresponding to the second line of the verse Vātsyāyana has नाथकापचारेषु किञ्चित् कलुषिता वात्यर्थं निवेदृ ॥ १८ ॥ स शिळे पवचनं त्वेन मित्रजनमध्यस्थमेकाकिनं वात्युपालमेत न च मूलकारिका स्यात् ॥ Benares edition, p. 227.

1. *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society*, Vol. II p. 185.

2. *Kāmarūpa*, Ben ed., p. 195.

made verbal quotations from the work. Now Kālidāsa could not have lived later than the middle of the fifth century A. C., because he places the Hūpas on the banks of the *Vāṅkshū*, the Waksh or Oxus in Bactria,<sup>1</sup> before they had been pushed towards the west or towards the Indian frontier.<sup>2</sup> In all likelihood Kālidāsa lived during

1. The passages of Kālidāsa referred to here are verses 67 and 68 *Raghuvamśa*, canto IV, beginning—विरीताच्चमास्तस्य वक्षु तीरविचेष्टनैः. In the *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society* (Vol. II, p. 35 ff. and 391 ff.) Mahānāhopādhyāya Haraprasād Sāstrī has sought to place Kālidāsa about the middle of the sixth century A. C. depending on the garbled reading of Mallinātha who reads *Sindhu* instead of *Vāṅkshū* in the line quoted above. With all due deference to the great authority of Pandit Sāstrī, I would venture to differ from him here. There cannot be the shade of a doubt that *Vāṅkshū* is the correct reading here and not *Sindhu*. Vallabhadeva of Kashmīr, who lived about five centuries earlier than Mallinātha, reads *Vāṅkshū*, and the unquestioned genuineness and reliability of Vallabha's text as compared with that of Mallinātha has been fully established in the case of the *Meghadūta* where all those verses that had been accepted by Mallinātha as genuine, but had been rejected as spurious by modern critics like Pandit Jyavarachandra Vidyāsāgara, Gildemeister and Stenzler, are found to be absent from the text of Vallabha. The superiority of Vallabha's text thus established in the case of *Meghadūta* applies with equal force to the *Raghuvamśa*. To an editor like Mallinātha living in the far south in the fourteenth or fifteenth century, *Vāṅkshū* or *Vakshu*, a river in Bactria, was an unfamiliar, outlandish name, and he had no hesitation in substituting for it *Sindhu* which was nearer home, forgetting though that it would have been geographically absurd for Rāghu to have marched northwards from the Persian frontier and let the Hūnas on the Indus. It is significant again, as has been shown by Professor K. B. Pathak, who first drew pointed attention to Vallabha's reading (Ind. Ant. 1912, p. 265 ff. and the introduction to his *Meghadūta*) that Kshīrasvāmin who lived about four centuries earlier than Mallinātha speaks in his commentary on the *Amarakosha*, of Bactria as the province that is referred to in this passage of Kālidāsa; this shows that so late as the eleventh century, Bactria through which the river Vāṅkshū or Oxus flows was considered to be the country where Kālidāsa placed the Hūnas. Vāṅkshū is a well-known river in the *Mahābhārata* (Cf. Sāhīparva, 51, 26). Moreover, an examination of the variants given in Mr. G. R. Nandargikar's splendid edition of *Raghuvamśa* shows that Cārtavānīhana, Sumatiwijaya, Dīnakara, Dharmameru and Vijayagantī, in fact, most of the great old commentators, follow Vallabha, and adopt the old reading.

2. M. Chavannes has shown from Chinese sources that the Huns had won great power in the basin of the Oxus towards the middle of the fifth century A. C. (*Document sur les Tchouïes Occidentaux*, pp. 222-3). We do not know yet exactly when the Hūpas settled themselves in the Oxus valley. But there can be no doubt that the Hūnas were known in India even before the time mentioned by M. Chavannes. The *Lallatistara*, thought to have been written about three hundred

the reigning period of Chandragupta Vikramāditya in the early years of the fifth century A.C.. Varāhamihira who unquestionably lived in the sixth century A.C., has in his *Brhat-Saṃhitā* certain chapters, specially two, named *Kāndarpikam* and *Pumstri-Samāyoga*,<sup>1</sup> in which he has dealt with matters falling within the sphere of the Kāmaśāstra and in them he seems clearly to have availed himself of Vātsyāyana's work, though he nowhere mentions his name.

The author of the Kāmasūtra is mentioned by name in the *Vāsavadattā* of Subandhu who is supposed to have flourished about the same time as Chandragupta Vikramāditya, *viz.*, at the beginning of the fifth century A.C.<sup>2</sup> While describing the Vindhya mountains, Subandhu says: "It was filled with elephants and was fragrant from the perfume of its jungles, just as the Kāmasūtra was written by Mallanāga and contains the delight and enjoyment of mistresses."<sup>3</sup> Thus from the evidence offered by Kālidāsa and Subandhu we can feel definitely certain that the Kāmasūtra was written before 400 A.C.

The name Mallanāga referred to by Subandhu is the proper name of the author of the Kāmasūtra, Vātsyāyana being his *gotra* or family name as pointed out by the commentator and as is corroborated by some of

years after Christ (Dr. Winternitz, *Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur*, Band II, p. 200) mentions *Hūna-Lipi* as one of the scripts learned by the young Siddhārtha (*Lalitavistara* edited by Dr. S. Lefmann, Vol. I. p. 126; IA, 1913, p. 266). Besides Dr. J. J. Modi has shown from an examination of passages in the Avestā that the Huns were known in Persia as a wandering or pillaging nation not later than the seventh century before Christ (*R. G. Bhandarkar Commemoration Volume*, pp. 71-76). It stands to reason therefore that the Huns should be known to the Indians also, especially since their occupation of the Oxus valley, seeing that Bactria was very well-known to Vātsyāyana and was considered a part of India so late as the sixth century A. C. when Varāhamihira wrote his *Brhat-Saṃhitā*.

1 Chapters 76 and 78 of *Brhat-Saṃhitā* edited by Dr. H. Kern, Calcutta, 1865.

2 *Mahāmāhopadhyāya Haraprasādī Sāstri* in the J. A. S. B. 1905, p. 253.

3 *Vāsavadattā*, translated by Dr. Louis H. Gray, p. 69.

the lexicons. Two branches of the *Vatsa-gotra* to which our author belongs are mentioned by Āśvalāyana in his *Śrautasūtra*,<sup>2</sup> and in the history of Sanskrit literature, there are two great representatives, besides our author, of this family : one of them is the great poet Bāns, who in one of the introductory verses to his *Kādambarī* speaks of his grandfather as a scion of the Vātsyāyana family,<sup>3</sup> and the other is the author of the *Nyāyabhāṣya*. This latter has sometimes been identified with our author as in the verse from Hemacandra's *Abhidhānacintāmaṇi* quoted before<sup>4</sup> ; but we have seen that Hemacandra in the same passage identifies our author also with Kautilya, Cāṇakya, or Vishnugupta who, we definitely know, preceded him by several centuries. The long period that separated these authors from Hemacandra has made him lose the historical perspective and his opinion in this connection does not deserve much consideration. Another argument based on internal evidence may be urged in favour of the identity of the two Vātsyāyanas. The *Kāmasūtra* defines *Kāma* or desire as the consciousness of the enjoyment of appropriate objects through the five organs of sense ( and especially through the organ of touch ) controlled and directed by the mind associated with the soul.<sup>5</sup> Now, this is exactly the position held with regard to the method of direct perception or *pratyaksha* expounded in the *Nyāyasūtra* as well as in the *Bhāṣya*. The *Bhāṣyakāra*

<sup>1</sup> वात्स्यात्म इति स्वगोत्रनिमित्ता समाज्या भद्रात्म इति च सांस्कारिकी ; *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 17 ; see also note 5, p. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Āśvalāyana *Śrauta Sūtra*, *Bibliotheca Indica*, XII, 10, 6-7, p. 875.

<sup>3</sup> बद्रू वात्स्यायायनवेशंभवो द्विजो जगद्दीप्तिशुद्धोऽप्यतीः सतात् । अनेकशुद्धिर्चित्तपादपूज्जः कुर्वनामांश इव शशेभूतः ॥

*Kādambarī*, Introductory verse, 10

<sup>4</sup> See footnote 6, p. 15 *auct.*

<sup>5</sup> श्रोतृत्वकृचक्षिप्तिशुद्धायाशामात्मसंयुक्तेन भगवाऽपिष्ठितानां लोचु लेपु विशेषाः । उक्तप्रतः प्रदृचिः कामः । इपर्याक्षिप्तिश्च त्वस्याभिमानिक्तुष्टुक्तिराप्तास्तत्त्वाः । प्रतीतिः प्राचात्स्यात् कामः । — *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 14.

the reigning period of Chandragupta Vikramāditya in the early years of the fifth century A.C.. Varāhamihira who unquestionably lived in the sixth century A.C., has in his *Brhat-Samhitā* certain chapters, specially two, named *Kāndarpikam* and *Pumstri-Samāyoga*,<sup>1</sup> in which he has dealt with matters falling within the sphere of the Kāma-sastra and in them he seems clearly to have availed himself of Vātsyāyana's work, though he nowhere mentions his name.

The author of the Kāmasūtra is mentioned by name in the *Vāsavadattā* of Subandhu who is supposed to have flourished about the same time as Chandragupta Vikramāditya, *viz.*, at the beginning of the fifth century A.C.<sup>2</sup> While describing the Vindhya mountains, Subandhu says: "It was filled with elephants and was fragrant from the perfume of its jungles, just as the Kāmasūtra was written by Mallanāga and contains the delight and enjoyment of mistresses."<sup>3</sup> Thus from the evidence offered by Kālidāsa and Subandhu we can feel definitely certain that the Kāmasūtra was written before 400 A.C.

The name Mallanāga referred to by Subandhu is the proper name of the author of the Kāmasūtra, Vātsyāyana being his *gotra* or family name as pointed out by the commentator and as is corroborated by some of

years after Christ (Dr. Winternitz, *Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur*, Band II, p. 200) mentions *Hūna-Lipi* as one of the scripts learned by the young Siddhārtha (*Lalitavistara* edited by Dr. S. Lefmann, Vol. I. p. 126; IA, 1913, p. 266). Besides Dr. J. J. Modi has shown from an examination of passages in the Avesta that the Huns were known in Persia as a wandering or pillaging nation not later than the seventh century before Christ (*R. G. Bhandarkar Commemoration Volume*, pp. 71-76). It stands to reason therefore that the Huns should be known to the Indians also, especially since their occupation of the Oxus valley, seeing that Bactria was very well-known to Vātsyāyana and was considered a part of India so late as the sixth century A. C. when Varāhamihira wrote his *Brhat-Samhitā*.

1 Chapters 76 and 78 of *Brhat-Samhitā* edited by Dr. H. Kern, Calcutta, 1865.

2 Mahāmahopādhyāya Haraprasād Sūstrī in the J. A. S. B. 1905, p. 253.

3 *Vāsavadattā*, translated by Dr. Louis H. Gray, p. 69.

the lexicons. Two branches of the *Vātsa-golra* to which our author belongs are mentioned by Āśvalāyana in his *Śrautasūtra*;<sup>2</sup> and in the history of Sanskrit literature, there are two great representatives, besides our author, of this family : one of them is the great poet Bāna, who in one of the introductory verses to his *Kādambarī* speaks of his grandfather as a scion of the Vātsyāyana family,<sup>3</sup> and the other is the author of the *Nyāyabhashya*. This latter has sometimes been identified with our author as in the verse from Hemacandra's *Abhidhānacintāmaṇi* quoted before<sup>4</sup> ; but we have seen that Hemacandra in the same passage identifies our author also with Kauṭilya, Cāṇakya, or Vishnugupta who, we definitely know, preceded him by several centuries. The long period that separated these authors from Hemacandra has made him lose the historical perspective and his opinion in this connection does not deserve much consideration. Another argument based on internal evidence may be urged in favour of the identity of the two Vātsyāyanas. The *Kāmasūtra* defines *Kāma* or desire as the consciousness of the enjoyment of appropriate objects through the five organs of sense ( and especially through the organ of touch ) controlled and directed by the mind associated with the soul.<sup>5</sup> Now, this is exactly the position held with regard to the method of direct perception or *pratyaksha* expounded in the *Nyāyasūtra* as well as in the *Bhāshya*. The *Bhāshyakāra*

1 वात्स्यात्म इति स्वगोदूनिनित्या समाज्या महानाग हृति च सौस्कारिति ; *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 17; see also note 5, p. 1.

2 Āśvalāyana *Śrauta Sūtra*, Bibliotheca Indica, XII, 10, 6-7, p. 875.

3 बभूव वात्स्यायनवंशसंभवो ह्रिजो जगद्गीतपुष्टोऽप्यवृत्तिः सताम्। अर्नेकानुसर्वितपादपुष्टः, कुमेरनामार्था इव सदवंशवृत्तिः ॥

*Kādambarī*, Introductory verse, 10

4 See footnote 8, p. 15 *ante*.

5 श्रोतृत्वक्-चक्र-जिह्वाग्राहानामात्मसंयुक्तेन मनसाऽधिष्ठितानां स्वेषु स्वेषु विषयेष्वा-उक्तस्तः प्रवृत्तिः कामः । स्पर्शविशेषविषये त्वस्याभिमानिकस्तुतिकार्यात्मकः-प्रतीतिः प्राधान्यात् कामः (—*Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 14).

in his comment on Nyāyasūtras I. 1. 4 and 9, and I. 2, 20-27 makes it sufficiently clear that it is the *Ātman* or soul that receives perception with the help of the mind acting through the senses upon objects.<sup>1</sup> This identity of view of the two Vātsyāyanas with regard to experience or perception is no doubt true, but it will be observed that this view is held also by other schools, for example, the earlier Vedānta. The *Kaṭhupaniṣad* lays down in unmistakable terms that it is the soul that enjoys things acting through the mind and the senses, and the *Bhagavadgītā* upholds the same doctrine.<sup>2</sup> *Brahmasūtra*, II. 3. 18 (or 19 according to Rāmānuja) also appears to support the Upanishad view as shown by almost all the commentators.<sup>3</sup> It is only Śaṅkara who in his comment on *Brahmasūtra*, II. 3. 29<sup>4</sup> attempts to prove that pleasure and pain are the qualities of *buddhi* or intellect; but with regard to the *Vyavahārika* or *Samsāra* stage with which we are concerned in the Kāmasūtra, there is not much ground of difference even with Śaṅkara. It will be observed, therefore, that the doctrine of perception adumbrated by the Kāmasūtra, does not particularly belong to the *Nyāyabhaṣya* but

1. *Vide* the *Bhaṣya* particularly on the following sūtras: इन्द्रियार्थसङ्किर्त्तेऽपर्याप्तमध्यपदेश्यमध्यभिचारि व्यवसायात्मकम् प्रत्यक्षम् (I. 1. 4). *Vide* नात्ममनसोः सङ्किर्त्तमावे प्रत्यक्षोत्पत्तिः (I. 2. 21), etc.; *cfr.* तत्रात्मा सर्वस्य द्रष्टा, सर्वस्य भोक्ता, सर्वज्ञः, सर्वानुभावी, तत्य भोगायतनं शरीरम्। भोगायादनानीन्द्रियाणि भोक्तव्या हन्द्रियार्थाः, etc., in *Vātsyāyana*'s comment on *Nyāyasūtra*, I. 1. 9.

2. इन्द्रियाणि हयानाहुर्विषयांस्तेषु गोचरान्।

आत्मेन्द्रियमनोरुक्तं भोक्तेत्याहुर्मनोचिष्ठः॥ *Kaṭhupaniṣad*, III. 4.

Similar passages from the Upanishads might easily be multiplied.

ओर्तुं चक्रः स्पर्शनं च रसनं ग्राहमेव च।

अधिकाय मनस्त्वाय विषयानुपसेवते॥ *Gītā*, XIV. 9.

3. इति एव, *Brahmasūtra*, II. 3. 18; *vide* Rāmānuja's commentary on the same and also that of Śrīkaṇṭha.

4. तत्या दुदेरुग्णास्तदुगुणा इच्छा द्वेषः सुखं दुःखमित्येवमादयस्तदुगुणाः, etc. \* \* \* दुदेरुपाधिधर्माध्यासनिमित्तं हि कर्त्तृत्वभोक्त्वादिलक्षणं संसारित्वम् कर्तुर्स्मोक्त्रवाससारिणिः नित्यमुक्तस्य सत आत्मनः। Śaṅkara-Bhaṣya on तदुगुण-सामर्त्यात् तदुपदेशः प्राज्ञवत्। *Brahmasūtra*, II. 3. 29.

was very generally held among the philosophical schools at the time that our *Sūtra* was written, and this identity of view does not necessarily imply an identity of authors. Then again, the two Vātsyayanas appear to have been separated by more than a century. Prof. Jacobi has shown that the *Nyīyasūtras* were composed between 200 and 450 A. C. and that the *Nyīyabhāshya* was also written during the same period,<sup>1</sup> of course, towards the end of it. Mahāmahopādhyāya Dr. Satiśchandra Vidyābhūshana has proved by a more detailed analysis that the author of the *Nyīyabhāshya* "flourished at about A. D. 400, when Chandragupta II called Vikramāditya was King of Magadha."<sup>2</sup> By this time the author of the Kāmasūtra was, as we have already seen, an authority on erotics and, as we shall show more definitely below, at least a century had passed since he produced his work. Moreover, the styles of composition of the two authors are quite distinct. Then again, the author of the Kāmasūtra belongs most probably, as we shall show hereafter, to Western India while Dr. Vidyābhūshana assigns the writer of the *Nyīyabhāshya* to the Dravida country.<sup>3</sup> From all these considerations, we see that at present there is no valid reason for thinking that the two authors are one and the same.

Coming back to other works in Sanskrit literature referring to Vātsyāyana, we notice that in some editions of the *Pañcatantra* there are two passages in which Vātsyāyana is mentioned by name.<sup>4</sup> However, in the *Tantrākhyāyika* which is considered to be the earliest recension of the *Pañcatantra*, the name of Vātsyāyana

1 *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, Vol. XXXI, 1911, p. 29.

2 *Indian Antiquary*, 1915, p. 88.

3 *Ibid.* pp. 87-88.

4 *Pañcatantra*, edited by Dr. F. Kielhorn, p. 2, कामशास्त्रायामि वात्स्यायनादीक्षिण  
and p. 38, वात्स्यायनोक्तविधिनानिवेद्य; see Schmidt, *op-cit.*, p. 6.

does not occur, but in enumerating the usual subjects of study it mentions first grammar and then the *Dharma*, *Artha* and *Kāma Sūstras* in general.<sup>1</sup> The *Tantrākhyāyika* has been supposed to have been written about 300 A.C.<sup>2</sup> The mention of the *Kāmasūtra* in it shows, at least, that the science of erotics had, in the third century A.C. obtained an equal footing with the sister sciences of *Dharma* and *Artha* as branches of learning that princes were required to acquire. This position it had not attained in 300 B.C., when, as we see from the *Arthasāstra* of Kautilya, though *kīma* had been recognised as one of the subjects of human interest (*līlārāga*), it had not as yet a *locus standi* as a science worth study, because it does not find a place in Kautilya's list where we find *Dharma*, *Artha*, *Itihāsa*, *Purāṇa*, and *Ākhyāna* (narratives) but not the *Kāmasāstra*.<sup>3</sup> In view of the fact, therefore, that it was Vātsyāyana who made popular the science which was almost extinct (*utsannaprāya*) in his time, the presumption is that the author of *Tantrākhyāyika* had his *Kāmasūtra* in mind when he wrote the passage above referred to. What we have said about the *Tantrākhyāyika* applies with equal force to the *Parva-saṃgraha-parva* which forms the introduction to the *Mahābhārata* and gives a summary of the whole story; it is certainly later than the main body of the work and may have been composed about the time we are speaking of. It describes the *Mahābhārata* as a veritable encyclopædia that embraced in its scope the *Arthasāstra*, the *Dharmaśāstra* and the

1 ततो धर्मार्थकामशास्त्राणि ज्ञेयानि—*The Pañcatantra* edited by Dr. J. Hertel, Harvard O.S., Vol. 14, p. 1.

2 *Das Pañcatantra, seine Geschichte und seine Verbreitung* von J. Hertel, 1914, p. 9; see also Prof. Lanman's introduction to the *Pañcatantra*, Harvard O. S., Vol. 14, p. X.

3 पुराणमित्युत्तमाल्यायिकोदाहरणं धर्मशास्त्रमर्थशास्त्रं चेतीतिहासः; *Kautilya's Arthasāstra*, edited by R. Shama Shastri, p. 10.

*Kāmasāstra*<sup>1</sup> shewing that the science was well-known at the time this chapter was added to the epic. It is significant in this connection that the *Lalitavistara* generally assigned to the second or third century A.C.,<sup>2</sup> in its enumeration of the subjects that the young Siddhārtha learnt, does not mention the *Kāmasāstra* in general but knows various sections of the science such as *Strīlakshana*, *Purushalakshana*, *Vaiśika*, etc., besides many of the *Kalās*.<sup>3</sup> We know that these subjects had been dealt with by Vātsyāyana's predecessors and that there was a monograph on *Vaiśika* by Dattaka of Pāṭaliputra, and it is no wonder that the author of the *Lalitavistara* who here seeks to exhaust all the branches of learning known under the sun, should refer to these subjects though known in his time only to a very few, and on the other hand, it seems to indicate an earlier date for the *Lalitavistara* than that of the *Kāmasūtra*, though unquestionably both of them belong to the same period, and nothing can be asserted as certain from only a negative piece of evidence.

We thus see that from the literary data given above, the earlier limit to the composition of the *Kāmasūtra* may be assigned on the basis of Vātsyāyana's quotations from the *Grhya* and *Dharma Sūtras*, the *Arthaśāstra* of Kautilya and the *Mahābhāshya* of Patañjali and that the lower limit may be fixed at *circa* 100 A.C. based on the dates of Kālidāsa and Subandhu and, further, that there are strong reasons to believe that it was known in the third century A.C. From the historical data that the *Kāmasūtra* affords we can come to a more definite determination of Vātsyāyana's date.

१ अर्थशास्त्रमिदं प्रोक्तं धर्मशास्त्रमिदं सहस्रं ।  
कामशास्त्रमिदं प्रोक्तं व्यासेनामितव्यविज्ञा ॥

*Ādiparva*, ch. ii, 383 (Calcutta), 384 (South Indian).

2 Dr. M. Winteritz, *Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur*, Band II, p. 200.

3 *Lalitavistara*, edited by Dr. F. Lefmann, p. 166 ff.

*Historical Data about the Date of Vātsyāyana*

The well-known passage<sup>1</sup> referring to the Andhra monarch Kuntala Śātakarṇi first pointed out by Sir R.G. Bhandarkar<sup>2</sup> furnishes important data. According to the Puranic list of the Andhra monarchs, Kuntala Svāti or Svātikarṇa is the thirteenth in descent from Simuka, the founder of the family. Sri Malla Śātakarṇi, the third monarch in this list, has been identified by Mr. K.P. Jayaswal with the Śātakani mentioned in the Hāthigumpha inscription of Khāravela and it has been shown by him that an expedition was undertaken by Khāravela in 171 B.C. against this Śātakarṇi.<sup>3</sup> Kuntala is separated from him by 168 years according to the Puranic enumeration<sup>4</sup> which is held as substantially correct. Kuntala therefore reigned about the very beginning of the Christian era.<sup>5</sup> Calculating again back from the great Andhra monarch Gautamīputra Śātakarṇi who according to professor D. R. Bhandarkar came to the throne in A.C. 133<sup>6</sup> and who according to the Puranic list is separated from Kuntala Śātakarṇi by about 123 years, we find that the reigning period of Kuntala falls in the early years of the first century A. C.

१ कर्त्तर्या कुन्तलः शारकर्णः शारवाहनो महादेवी मलयवतीम् (ज्ञान), *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 149.

2 *Early History of the Deccan*, p. 31. I beg leave to submit that *Kartari* here does not mean "a pair of scissors" as translated by Sir R. G. Bhandarkar, but it is a technical term to denote a kind of stroke dealt by a man with one or both of his hands at a woman's head at the parting of the hair (*Simanta*). Vātsyāyana says that these strokes are in vogue among the people of the south (*Dūshinītyāñām*) and he condemns them as they sometimes proved fatal. The case of Kuntala Śātakarṇi is an example in point. See *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., pp. 147-9.

3 *J. B. O. R. S.*, Vol. III, pages 441, 442.

4 Pargiter, *Dynasties of the Kali Age*, pp. 38-40.

5 Mr. Ramaprasad Chanda would place Śātakani of Khāravela about B.C. 75-20. Kuntala then would belong to the end of the first century A.C. (Memoirs of the Arch. Surv. of Ind. No. 1, p. 11, 1919).

6 *Dekkan of the Śātavāhana Period*, Ind. Ant., 1918, p. 78.

This is then the upper limit of the composition of the Kāmasūtra which was therefore written between the first and the fifth centuries after Christ. We may next attempt to come to a closer approximation.

Vātsyāyana mentions the Ābhīras and the Andhras as ruling side by side at the same time in the South-West of India. He speaks of an Ābhīra Kottaraja,<sup>1</sup> a king of Koṭṭa in Gujarat, who was killed by a washerman employed by his brother. Then, again, in his chapter on the conduct of women confined in harems, Vātsyāyana describes the sexual abuses practised in the seraglio of the Ābhīra kings among others. Now, King Iṣvarasena, son of the Ābhīra Śivadatta, is mentioned as a ruling sovereign in one of the Nasik inscriptions and is thought to have reigned in the third century A.C.<sup>2</sup> Besides, Mahākshatrapa Iṣvaradatta is considered on very reasonable grounds to have been an Ābhīra, and his coins show that he reigned some time between *circa* 236 and 239 A.C.<sup>3</sup> About a century later, in the early years of the fourth century A.C. (*circa* 336 A.C.), the Ābhīras were met by Samudragupta.<sup>4</sup> The period when the Ābhīras most flourished, therefore, was the third century A.C. on epigraphic and numismatic grounds. The Andhra rulers are also referred to by Vātsyāyana but certainly as mere local kings. In his chapter on *Īvara-kāmita*, or "The Lust of Rulers," Vātsyāyana describes

1 आभीरं हि कोट्टराजं परभवन्नतं भ्रातृप्रयुक्तो रज्जको जयात् Kāmasūtra. Ben. ed., p. 287. Vātsyāyana here mentions a Koṭṭraja Jayatkena about whom very little is known.

2 ज्ञात्रियसंज्ञकरन्तःपुररक्षिभिरेवार्थं साधयन्त्याभीरकानाम् । *Ibid.*, p. 204.

3 *Archæological Survey of Western India*, IV, p. 103. See also Professor D. R. Bhandarkar's paper on the Gurjaras, *J. B. B. R. A. S.*, Vol. xxi, p. 436.

4 *The Western Kshatrapas* by Pandit Bhagwanlal Indraji, *J. B. A. S.*, 1890, p. 657 ff. See also *Catalogue of the Coins of the Andhra Dynasty* by E. P. Rapson, pp. cxxxiii ff. Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar assigns Iṣvaradatta to A. C. 188-90 (*Arch. Sur. Ind.*, An. Rep., 1913-14, p. 280).

5 J. F. Fleet, *Gupta Inscriptions*, p. 8.

various forms of sexual abuse practised by kings and it is significant that all the rulers here mentioned are referred to by the names of the people they ruled over and belong to the South Western India, *viz.*, the Kings of the Aparāntakas, the Vaidarbhas, the Saurāshṭrakas, the Vātsagulmakas and the Andhras.<sup>1</sup> The Andhra monarchs here referred to evidently ruled over the Andhra people proper, and the social customs and practices of the Andhra people are described in various other parts of the book also.<sup>2</sup> There is no reference in the Kāmasūtra to the position of the Andhras as sovereigns exercising suzerain sway. The time, therefore, described by Vātsyāyana is that when the line of the great Andhra emperors had come to an end and the country was split up into a number of small kingdoms, among which the most considerable were those ruled over by the *Andhra-bhrtyas*, or dynasties sprung up from the officers of the imperial Andhras. Among them the Purāṇas mention the Ābhīras, the Gardabhinas, the Sakas and also some Andhras<sup>3</sup> who evidently ruled over a limited territory at the time referred to. The time when Vātsyāyana flourished is therefore the period when these later Andhra kings and the Ābhīras ruled simultaneously over different parts of Western India, that is, subsequent to *circa* 225 A.C.,<sup>4</sup> when the line of the great Andhras disappeared and before the beginning of the fourth century A.C.,

1 *Kāmasūtra*, Ben. ed., pp. 287-288.

2 *Ibid.*, pp. 126, 135, 287, etc.

3 Pargiter, *Dynasties of the Kali Age*, p. 45; the Matsya, Vāyu, and Brāhmaṇa Purāṇas read—

अन्ध्रानां संस्थिते राज्ये तेषां भूत्यान्वया नृपाः ।  
ससैवान्ध्रा भविष्यन्ति दशाभीरास्तथा नृपाः ।  
ससैवान्ध्राभिरास्तथा पि शकाश्वाद्यैव तु ।

4 Dr. V. A. Smith, *Early History of India*, 3rd ed. p. 212 Prof. D. R. Bhāskarākāra, *Dekhan of Śātavāhana Period* (Ind. Ant. 1918, p. 85), also holds that "the Śātavāhana power came to an end in the first half of the third century A. D."

when the Guptas of whom there is no mention in the Kāmasūtra, were again uniting northern India under a common sway. From this the conclusion is inevitable that the Kāmasūtra was composed about the middle of the third century A.C. and this agrees with the conclusion arrived at from an examination of the literary data.

Since the above remarks about the date of the *Kāmasūtra* were placed before the public in the

*Recent Discussions on the Date* *Journal of the Department of Letters*  
of the University of Calcutta (Vol. IV),

several scholars in India and Europe have expressed their opinion on the same subject. Of these, Prof. A. Banerji Sastri has examined the question in the *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society*<sup>1</sup> and has arrived at almost the same conclusion as myself on mostly the same arguments, the only difference being that Prof. Sastri would place Vātsyāyana

*Banerji-Sastri—end of Third Century A.C.* to "approximately the end of the third century A.D." while I have placed

him about the middle. Prof. Sastri, moreover, differs from me in thinking that Bhāsa's drama, *Āvīmāraka*, was known to Vātsyāyana,<sup>2</sup> while I have expressed my doubts about it.<sup>3</sup>

Prof. Jolly in the introduction to his edition of the *Arthaśāstra* has sought to prove that the *Arthaśāstra* was composed in the third century after Christ and the *Kāmasūtra* which was modelled upon it, in the fourth century A.C.<sup>4</sup> Every one of the arguments of Jolly with regard to the date of the *Arthaśāstra* has been critically examined by Mr. K. P. Jayaswal in his recently published work on *Hindu Polity*<sup>5</sup>

1 Vol. ix, Part I, p. 49 ff.

2 *Ibid.* p. 57.

3 See *ante* p. 17.

4 *Arthaśāstra of Kautilya*, a New Edition, Vol. I, Lahore, 1923, pp. 21-29.

5 *Hindu Polity, A Constitutional History of India in Hindu Times*, Calcutta 1924, Appendix C, pp. 203-14.

and has been shown to be untenable, and the 4th century B.C. has been proved to be the only probable date for that work. His theory therefore with regard to the date of Vātsyāyana naturally falls to the ground.

Applying to this date Prof. Jolly's dictum that the Kāmasūtra and the Arthasāstra could not have been separated by more than a century at most<sup>1</sup> we would arrive at a date which is absurd for the Kāmasūtra. Jolly does not consider the political evidence as very conclusive and holds that "it will be necessary to confine oneself to the literary data in fixing the age of the Kāmasūtra" (p. 29); and the evidence offered by the literary data is this according to him: "If both Kālidāsa and Subandhu are rightly referred to the fifth century A.D., the Kāmasūtra might be placed in the fourth century."<sup>2</sup> This theory twice applied here by Jolly that whenever there are two authors of whom one shows evidence of his debt to the other, they cannot be separated by more than a century, is one that will hardly hold good in the history of literature of any country in the world. There is no earthly reason why Kālidāsa and Vātsyāyana cannot be separated by two centuries and Kauṭilya and Vātsyāyana by six centuries. Kālidāsa, when he had occasion to refer to the Kāmasāstra, found Vātsyāyana's book to be the standard work on the subject and naturally borrowed from it, and Vātsyāyana too, when he set himself to write the Kāmasūtra, a work on a secular subject in a country where most of the literature was religious, had naturally his eyes turned to this masterly work which like his was "thoroughly realistic and worldly"<sup>3</sup>, and withal manifested "a rare unity of plan and structure"<sup>4</sup>, and which even now

1 Jolly, *op. cit.*, p. 29.

2 *Ibid.*, p. 28.

3 *Ibid.*, p. 3.

4 *Ibid.*, p. 5.

we have no hesitation in declaring 'the most precious work in the whole range of Sanskrit literature.'<sup>1</sup> During the many centuries that intervened between the two authors, Kauśilya's work had not been superseded but still dominated the field as it continued to dominate for many centuries longer. Is it any wonder then that Vātsyāyana should take this work on an allied subject as his model and borrow its method and style?

I, however, agree with Prof. Jolly (p. 26) in holding that the abstention from meat which Vātsyāyana refers to while defining *Dharma*<sup>2</sup> is only a theory, or rather an ideal which, as Vātsyāyana says, people would learn from the *Sastra* or the works on that subject and it did not represent the actual state of things in his time. A glimpse at real life which we have in his section on *Samprayoga* shows that meat diet was in vogue, and both amongst men and women. Vātsyāyana advises a lover to please his mistress when she feels rather tired or exhausted, with such relishes as roasted or dried meat as well as gruel and extracts of meat of various kinds. One of them is called by Vātsyāyana *uecha-rasaka-yuṣam* and the commentary explains that it was a fresh extract of meat (*māṃsa-niryūham*), and another called *amla-yarāgū* is said to be prepared by boiling with meat (*māṃsa-siddhā*).<sup>3</sup> The doctrine of *ahimsa* and the eating of meat have existed in India side by side since the earliest Vedic times and no conclusion can be arrived at with regard to the date of a work simply from the mention or non-mention of the doctrine of *ahimsa* in it. Even in the Rgveda, the cow was recognised as *aghnya* and the ox as *aghnya* (not to be slaughtered), while in

1 *Ibid.*, p. 1.

2 मांसभक्षणादिभ्यः शास्त्रादेव निवारणा धर्मः । *Kamasūtra*, p. 12.

3 अच्छ्रसकूपमस्तयवाग् भृष्टमांसोपदंशानि पामकानि चृतफलानि शृष्टमांसे

etc. *Ibid.*, p. 174.  
4 Macdonell *Vedic Mythology*, p. 150.

the *Vinaya Pitaka* itself we are told that oxen in plenty were slaughtered by Sīha, the Licchavi Commander-in-Chief to feed the Buddha and his attending bhikṣus.<sup>1</sup> A newly converted minister at Bonares placed twelve hundred and fifty dishes of meat (mūṣa-pāṭi) before the bhikṣus including the Buddha himself.<sup>2</sup> The mere fact, therefore, that a work prohibits meat-eating is not sufficient reason to dub it as post-Buddhistic.

What has been said above with regard to Prof. Jolly's theory about the date of the Kāmasūtra applies

with equal force to what Prof. M. Winternitz has observed on the same subject in the third volume of his *History of Indian Literature* where he has arrived at the same conclusion as Dr. Jolly and on the very same grounds, though independently. Thus the Professor observes : "That it (the *Kāmasūtra*) is later than the Kauṭilya-*Arthaśāstra* cannot be doubted. But it can hardly be much later ; for the great similarity between the two books makes it clear that the Kāmasūtra is separated from Kauṭilya only by a short interval. If we place the latter, say, in the third century after Christ, then the Kāmasūtra of Vātsyāyana is to be placed somewhere in the fourth. But it is nothing more than a guess." Here it will be seen that Winternitz also has nothing more to fix the date than the mere guess that Kauṭilya and Vātsyāyana cannot be separated by more than a century. As in the case of Jolly, Winternitz's failure to establish the third century for Kauṭilya necessarily leads to the rejection of the fourth century for Vātsyāyana.

Mahāmahopādhyāya Haraprasad Sastri in his

1 *Mahāvagga*, vi. 81, 12 ; vi. 88, 3.

2 *Ibid.* vi. 25, 3.

3 Translated from *Geschichte der Indianischen Litteratur* von Dr. M. Winternitz, III Band, p. 540.

*Magadhan Literature* has, on the other hand, sought to push back the date of the Kamasutra to the first century A.C., his argument being that "Vatsyayana flourished at a time when the memory of the scandal (of Kuntala Satakarni) was fresh. So he may be placed in the first century A.D.; for, the public memory is far short and in one or two generations, people forget these scandals."<sup>1</sup> Here the Mahamahopadhyaya, unlike Jolly, considers the political data as the deciding factor, but accepting his conclusion we are met by the difficulty that in the first century A.C., we have no evidence of Abhirra monarchs ruling side by side with the Andhras. Both according to epigraphic as well as Pauranic evidence, the Abhiras rose to power in the third century A.C., so that the date of Vatsyayana who is no less acquainted with the scandals of the Abhirra court than with those among the Andhras, cannot be placed in the first century A.C. Moreover, we have ample evidence to show that court scandals are referred to by Indian writers many centuries after they took place. Vatsyayana himself refers to the scandal of Dandakya, the Bhoja<sup>2</sup> who must have lived many centuries prior to the composition of the Kamasutra. Visakhadatta in his *Mudrarakshasa* refers to court intrigues and scandals many centuries older than his time. The *Brahmanihita* refers to scandals like that of king Viduratha who was killed by his queen with a sharp instrument hid in her hair and to a Kastrija who was similarly killed with a poisoned anklet<sup>3</sup> and there is nothing to show that they lived about the same time as Varaha-mihira. Asvaghosa in the fourth chapter of his *Buddhacarita* relates scandals most of which were far

1 *Magadhan Literature* by MM. Haraprasad Sastri, Calcutta 1933, p. 84.

2 *Kamasutra*, p. 24.

3 *Brahmanihita*, Ch. 78, 1.

removed in date from his. We are therefore unable to see eye to eye with MM. Haraprasad Sastri with regard to the date fixed by him for the Kāmasūtra.

Some other points in MM. Sastri's work call for comment. He identifies Śvetaketu,<sup>1</sup> the mythical reformer of primitive society, who according to an account in the Mahābhārata set up the institution of marriage, with Śvetaketu Āruṇeya, the highly cultured philosopher of the Upanishads. The *Rgveda* shows a well-organised family life with the institution of marriage fully developed amongst the Indo-Aryans, and therefore, the age when that institution grew and developed must have preceded the *Rgvedic* era by a very long period and the age of Śvetaketu Āruṇeya—an age of intense metaphysical speculation when the *Upaniṣadic* literature grew, could certainly not be identical with it. Then there is not the least justification for MM. Sastri's statement that "Auddalaki wrote more on union or Samprayoga than on other subjects. He divided that subject into ten major heads. So his work was called *Dasatayī*".<sup>2</sup> These are all statements unauthorised by Vātsyāyana who on the other hand asserts that Śvetaketu's huge work in five hundred chapters dealt with the whole of the Kāmasūtra and that it was Bābhravya who divided and arranged the contents of Śvetaketu's work into seven *adhikaranas* or sections; in fact, of the three passages in the Kāmasūtra where Vātsyāyana quotes Auddalaki, one belongs to the Samprayoga section, another to the Pāradārika, and the third to the Vaisīka section.<sup>3</sup> The third of these is the longest quotation from Auddalaki where a whole group of sūtras is spoken of by Vātsyāyana as the opinion of Auddalaki as distinguished from the theory of Bābhravya, so that

<sup>1</sup> *Magadhan Literature*, p. 78.

<sup>2</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 79.

<sup>3</sup> See *ante*, p. 7 ff. and p. 10, note 2.

there is no justification for the conjecture that Auddalaki's work dealt with the one topic of Samprayoga alone. It was rather Bābhravya, the Pāñcāla who specially shone in his delineation of the sixty-four Samprayoga-kalas. For the other statements that Auddalaki's work was called Daśatayī or that he divided Samprayoga into ten sections, there is absolutely no foundation. Vātsyāyana says that the Rgveda was called Daśatayī and not Auddalaki's work and in the whole chapter where this topic is dealt with there is no reference to Auddalaki at all.

Prof. Batuknath Bhattacharya in his paper headed "A Brief Survey of the Sāhityasāstra" in the *Journal of the Department of Letters* of the University of Calcutta, has incidentally discussed the date of the Kāmasūtra.<sup>1</sup> He has not hazarded any definite opinion on the date but has expressed his difference with the conclusion arrived at by me, mainly on two grounds. In the first place, he observes, "It is hard to believe that it (the Kāmasūtra) could have been composed later than the Nātya-Śāstra, considering the style in which it is written—a style distinctly aphoristic in nature and reminiscent of the sūtra period (600-200 B.C.)." Vātsyāyana's mention of Kuntala Śālakarṇi precludes any possibility of his composing the sūtras on erotics in the so-called sūtra period of Max Müller, and while comparing the Kāmasūtra with the Nātyasāstra it should be borne in mind that the latter, though passing as the product of one author who is more or less mythical, bears on its face the evidence of the handiwork of different ages, that, in fact, we have before us, as Prof. Winternitz observes, "a compilation of various older and later texts." The same scholar also remarks that "the original work

B. Bhattacharya  
—Vātsyāyana  
before Bharata

1 See Vol. ix, pp. 110-113.

was probably a Sūtra-text, as indeed the oldest scientific works as a rule were composed in the Sūtra style."<sup>2</sup> The Nātyaśāstra has been variously assigned by scholars from the first to the sixth or seventh century A.C.,<sup>3</sup> so that it is not unlikely that some portions of the Nātyaśāstra were older than the Kāmasūtra while others were much younger.

The particular point on which, however, Prof. Bhattacharya sets up a comparison between the two works viz., the classification of men and women into different categories, proves nothing, as the different authors have proceeded to classify them from different points of view. Vātsyāyana divides men into Śaśa, Vṛṣa and Aśva and women into Mṛgī, Baḍavā and Hastinī from their different capacities for *samprayoga*, while Bharata's classification of women into 24 varieties<sup>4</sup> is based on aesthetic, intellectual and moral standards. No comparison lies between the two authors in this respect and the more elaborate classification of Bharata does not necessarily imply a later date. We find the same three-fold classification of males and females in the *Anaṅga-rāṅga*, a work on erotics composed in the late 15th or early 16th century A.C. when the Lodi Emperors were ruling at Delhi.<sup>5</sup>

Next, Prof. Bhattacharya remarks, "It seems a little remarkable that Vātsyāyana should not have mentioned any of his predecessors more contiguous to his own date but should have looked so far back as to the 4th century B.C. This would argue a certain break in the continuity of the study." There was indeed such a break in the continuity of the study of the science of Erotics, as Vātsyāyana himself asserts that the Kāmasāstra was very near extinction (*utsannakalpam-abhūt*) before he took it up, so much so, that he had to fall back upon the ancient and little-read text of Bābhravya to compile his work; he does not think much of the monographs of Dattaka and others which he holds were rather fragmentary and scrappy (*khaṇḍasak pranītam*).<sup>6</sup>

<sup>2</sup> *Ges. d. Ind. Lit.* iii. 8. See also *Studies in the History of Sanskrit Poetics* by Sushil Kumar De, M.A., D. Litt., vol. I, pp. 23-36.

<sup>3</sup> Winteritz, *op. cit.*, p. 8, n. 3.

<sup>4</sup> *Kāmasātra*, p. 71 and *Nātyaśāstra*, xxii, 96-142.

<sup>5</sup> *Anaṅga-rāṅga*, trans. by Burton and Arbutnot, Paris, 1908, p. xvi. See S. K. De, *op. cit.*, p. 842.

<sup>6</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 7 and 381. See also *ante*, p. 8 ff.

## CHAPTER II

### THE GEOGRAPHY OF VÂTSYÂYANA.

V. knows all parts of India

Vatsyayana in enumerating the special customs and practices in different parts of India mentions many of its countries and peoples. He appears to have been familiar with all parts of the Indian continent. Of the five great divisions of India since the Vedic times he mentions three, *viz.* the *Pracya* country, the *Madhyadeśa* and the *Dakṣinālīya* or the *Dakṣinapath*. In the Vedic age, as we know from a well known passage in the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* (viii. 14), the whole of India is shown to consist of five great *Diks* or divisions, the *Praci Dik* with its *Śamrāt* rulers, the *Dakṣinā Dik* with its *Bhoja* sovereigns, the *Pratīci* and *Udici Diks* with their *Śvarāt* and *Virāt* rulers, and the *Dhrurā Madhyamā Dik* with its kings called *Rājas*. This partition of India into five *Diks*, that is quarters or divisions, is found to be a familiar practice in the *Atharva-Veda* and both the *Kṛṣṇa* and *Śukla* recensions of the *Yajurveda Sāṃhitā*.<sup>1</sup> In later times we find the *Dik* often changed into *Deśa*, as for example, the *Praci Dik* and the *Madhyamā-Dik* are called the *Pracya-Deśa* and the *Madhya-Deśa* respectively. This traditional division of India into *Diks* or *Deśas* is found throughout in Indian literature: it is found in the Vedic works, the Epics and the *Urāṇas*, the astronomical works like those of Parāśara and Varāhamihira, and in the *Kāvya-mīmāṃsā* of Rājneśkhara<sup>2</sup> written about the

1 *Atharva-veda* iii. 27; iv. 40; xli. 8; xv. 2—6 etc. *Taittirīya Sāṃhitā* iv. 4—12; *Rājñaka Sāṃhitā* xxii. 14; *Maṭrūyāṇi Sāṃhitā* iii. 16, 4; *Uṇḍasaneyi Sāṃhitā* xv. 10—14 etc. etc. This question has been fully dealt with in my paper on "Aryan Occupation of Eastern India," pp. 46—78.

2 *Gaekwad's Oriental Series* No. I, p. 98 ff.

beginning of the tenth century we find the same five-fold division of the Indian continent. This system of general division of India was also adopted by some of the Chinese travellers.

A few places in the Central Division of India are referred to by *Vatsyayana* in his work and the general name *Madhyadeśa* also has been employed <sup>Madhyadeśa or Central Division</sup> by him in one passage where he says that in the *Madhyadeśa*, there being a preponderance of *Āryas*, that is, of persons of decent character who were pure in their habits, the ladies in that region disliked unclean practices like kissing, pressing the nails and biting by the other sex.<sup>1</sup> This *Madhyadeśa* is no doubt the same as the *Madhyamā Dik* of Vedic literature; and may be considered to have the same limits as the *Madhyadeśa* of Manu who defines it as the country between the *Himavat* and the *Vindhya* mountains, to the west of *Prayāga* and to the east of *Vinasana*, that is, of the spot where the river *Sarasvatī* disappears<sup>2</sup>; but more probably, it is the region between the *Ganges* and the *Jumna*, that is, the land of the *Āryas* according to one of the views pointed out by *Vasiṣṭha* and *Baudhāyana* in their *Dharmasutras*.<sup>3</sup> The commentary, *Jayamāṅgalā* is inclined to adopt this definition of the boundaries of the *Madhyadeśa*, because, as it says, this is mainly intended by the author of the *Kama-Sastra*.<sup>4</sup>

The word *Ārya* used here by *Vatsyayana* is not an ethnical designation but it is applied to a person who, as

1 मध्यदेश्या आर्यप्राथाः कुरुत्युपचाराश्चकुम्भनकर्त्तव्यात् पदद्वेविशयः । *Kamasūtra*, B. ed., p. 125.

2 *Manu* II. 21. Translation, Buehler, S. B. E. XXV, p. 33.

3 *Vasiṣṭha*, i. 12; *Baudhāyana*, i. 2, 10.

4 'गाम्याथमूलयोरित्येके' इति वसिष्ठः । अथमेव शास्त्रकृतां प्राधान्येनाभिप्रेतः । *īgalā Tīkā* on *Kamasūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 125.

Vātsyāyana says, is pure in habits (*sucyipacūrā*) ; in the example given by him the Ārya ladies of the Madhyadeśa did not like such practices as kissing or biting, apparently because of their aversion to contamination by spittle from another's mouth, that is, to what is known as *nichista*. It is evident, therefore, that Ārya in Vatsyayana means the same thing as in Vasiṣṭha and Baudhāyana, that is, a *Śista* or a person of decent habits and character, as will be seen from a reference to their respective *Dharmasūtras*.<sup>1</sup> There can, therefore, be no doubt that the *Āryavarta* of these latter authors was not the land of the Āryans, but the land of the *Śistas* whose manners and customs, habits and practices were decent and pure according to the Dharma literature. In the *Mahābhāṣya* Patañjali also explains Āryavarta as the land of the *Śistas*.<sup>2</sup>

It is worthy of remark, however, that in Vatsyayana's time decent conduct was more in evidence

in Eastern India, among people whom he calls *Prācyas* than among some of the peoples of the Madhyadeśa, and these *Prācyas* he places among the *Śistas*. Thus in his chapter on *Aupariṣṭaka*, a very filthy practice, Vatsyayana observes, "The people of Eastern India do not resort to women who practise the *Aupariṣṭaka*. The people of *Ahicchatra* resort to such women but do nothing with them, so far as the mouth is concerned. The people of *Sāketa* do with them every kind of mouth (abuses), while the people of *Nagara* do not practise this, but do every other thing. The people of the *Sūrasena* country, on the sothern bank of the *Jumna*, do everything without any hesitation, for they say that women being naturally unclean, no one can be certain about their character.

<sup>1</sup> *Vasiṣṭha*, i. 6 and *Baudhāyana*, i. 5.

<sup>2</sup> See *Mahābhāṣya* on *Pāṇini* vi. 3, 103 and ii. 4, 10. For a fuller discussion, see my *Aryan Occupation of Eastern India*, pp. 14-19.

their purity, their conduct, their practices, their confidences, or their speech. They are not, however, on this account to be abandoned, because religious law, on the authority of which they are reckoned pure, lays down that the udder of a cow is clean at the time of milking. Again a dog is clean when he seizes a deer in hunting. A bird is clean when it causes a fruit to fall from a tree by pecking at it. And the mouth of a woman is clean for kissing and such like things."<sup>1</sup> Vātsyāyana finally sums up by saying that in all these matters connected with love, one should be guided by the custom of one's own country and one's own personal inclination in as much as while on the one hand, the holy texts (*Smṛti*) allowed some latitude in such things, on the other hand, however, they were against the practice of the *sīṭas* (*sīṭa-vipratipattih*).<sup>2</sup> Here the commentary explains that the *sīṭas* spoken of in this passage are the Prācyas, the Ahicchatrikas and the Nāgarakas,<sup>3</sup> and the context shows that he is right.

Of the various peoples mentioned in the above passage from the *Kāmasūtra*, the Ahicchatrikas and the Saurasenas were natives of the Madhyadesa and the Nāgarakas also belonged probably to that Ahicchatra region for reasons that will be shown below. Of these, Ahicchatra, identified with modern Ramnagar in the Bareilly district,<sup>4</sup> was the capital of the northern division of the Pañcala country according to the

1 'The *Kāma-Sūtra* of Vātsyāyana' translated and published by the Kāma Sāstra Society of London and Benares, reprint 1883, p. 71.

2 शिष्टविप्रतिपत्तेः स्मृतिवाक्यस्य च सावकाशत्वादेष्टिष्ठतेरात्मनश्च वृत्तिप्रत्ययानुरूपं प्रवर्ततेरिति वात्स्यायनः । *Kāma-Sūtra*, Ben. ed., p. 167.

3 शिष्टविप्रतिपत्तेरिति । शिष्टानां प्राच्याहिच्छ्रविकनागरकानां विप्रतिपत्तिर्दश्यते । *Ibid.*, p. 167.

4 See V. A. Smith, *Early History of India*, third edn. p. 377.

Māhabhārata which states that as the result of the defeat which Dropacarya inflicted on Drupada, the Pāñcāla king, the country was partitioned into two, and that the Brahmin teacher of the Kurus established his capital at Ahiechatra to the north of the Ganges,<sup>1</sup> and that up to this place the Kaurava battalions reached when the forces of the opposing armies assembled for the Great War.<sup>2</sup> It is a significant fact that we find a Brahmin

Brahmin Rulers at Ahiechatra family ruling at Ahiechatra in the second century B.C. and that it had marital relations with the great Brahmin

imperial family of the Sungas. The names of this family of Kings of *Adhichatra* which is apparently the same as Ahiechatra are given in two inscriptions in a cave at Pabhosā (the classical hill of Prabhāsa) 3 miles to the north-west of Kosam, the ancient Kausambi. The inscription inside the cave records that it was "caused to be made by Āśādhāsena, son of the Vaihidi (i.e., Vaihida-princess, and ) son of King Bhāgavata, son of the Tevāñi (i.e., Traivarṇa-princess), and son of King Vaṅgapala, son of Śonakayana (Śaunakayana) of Adhichatra."<sup>3</sup> Another inscription on the rock outside

१ राजासि दक्षिणे कूले भागीरथ्याहमुत्तरे । ७०  
 दक्षिणांश्चापि पालचालान् यावच्चर्मणवती नदो ।  
 द्रोणेन चैव द्रुपदः परिमुद्राय पालितः ॥७४  
 अहिच्छत्रम्ब विषयं द्रोणः समभिपथत । ७५  
 पूर्वं राजाहिच्छत्रा मुदो जनपदायुता ।  
 युधि निर्जित्य पार्थेन द्रोणाय प्रतिपादिता ॥७६

*Mahābhārata*, A. Ep. 11, Ch. 133, Vāñgaśād ed. 1.

२ अहिच्छत्रं कालकूटं गङ्गाकुलम्ब भारत ।

... ... ...

वभूव कौरवेयानां यसेन द्यसमाकूलः ।

*Ibid*, *Udyoga-parca*, Ch. 19, verses 30-31.

३ Trans. A. Führer, *Epigraphia Indica*, II, p. 248.

the cave records the further fact that this Āśādhasena was the maternal uncle of King Bahasatimitra, the son of Gopālī.<sup>1</sup> This King Bahasatimitra has been identified with the Śunga Emperor, Pusyamitra by Mr. K. P. Jayaswal<sup>2</sup> who holds that "the Ahicchatra family of Āśādhasena was either gubernatorial or feudatory to the Magadha throne." He further points out that the "Ahicchatra family were Brahmas like the Śungas, an ancestor of Āśādhasena being called Saunakāyana."<sup>3</sup> In the neighbourhood of Ahicchatra have been picked up the so-called Mitra coins and among them those of a King Agnimitra who is considered to be the same as the second emperor of the Śunga dynasty,<sup>4</sup> and a dedicatory inscription at Budh Gayā assigned to the earlier part of the first century B.C., records the gift of a queen of King Indramitra of Ahicchatra.<sup>5</sup> We know very little of the subsequent history of Ahicchatra but by the time that Vātsyayana wrote his book, in the third century B.C., this city must have passed like the whole of the province to which it belongs through the hands of the Kushan monarchs. It is significant that while Vātsyayana speaks of the people of Ahicchatra, he has nothing to record of the king or the king's harem as he does in other cases.

The *Saurasenas* occupied the country about the city of Mathurā, their capital. They are located by the

Saurasenas degraded since the Manu-samhita by foreign contact commentary to the south of the river Kausāmbī<sup>6</sup> which is apparently the stream flowing by the celebrated city of the same name. From the character that Vātsyayana gives them they appear to have fallen off from the pure

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 242.

<sup>2</sup> *J. B. O. R. S.*, 1917, pp. 478-485

<sup>3</sup> Rapson, *Sources of Indian History, Coins*, p. 13.

<sup>4</sup> *Cambridge History of India*, I. 526.

<sup>5</sup> सारसेनाः कौशाम्ब्या दक्षिणातः कूजे ये निवसन्ति । *Kām. S.* (Benares), p. 167.

and ideal conduct that characterised them in ancient times according to Manu who says, "The plain of the Kurus, the (country of the) Matsyas, Pāñcālas, and Śurasenakas, these (form) indeed, the country of the Brahmarśis (Brahmanical sages, which ranks) immediately after Brahmāvarta. From a Brāhmaṇa born in that country let all men on earth learn their several usages".<sup>1</sup> Evidently the Śaurasenas had fallen off from this high standard of purity under foreign domination. Mathurā had been occupied by the Greeks in the early years of the second century B.C. as pointed out by Kern on the authority of the *Gārgī-Saṅhitā* which says, "Then the viciously valiant Greeks, after reducing Śāketa, Pañcāla country and Mathurā will reach or take Kusumadhvaja (Palibothra)."<sup>2</sup> The Gārgī-Saṅhitā further adds that sometime after the Greeks, the country was occupied by the Śakas or Scythians.<sup>3</sup> This is fully corroborated by coins and inscriptions unearthed in Mathura itself and the country in its neighbourhood showing that about the first century before Christ the Śaka satraps Hagaṇa, Hagaṇasha, Rāṇjubula, Śodasa etc. were ruling at Mathurā.<sup>4</sup> Henceforth this city was under the domination of the Kushan monarchs for several centuries, so that in the third century after Christ when, according to our determination, Vatsyayana wrote his work, the Śaurasenas had got much degraded by intercourse with foreigners of immensely inferior culture and had lost the ancient purity in their manners

1. Büchler, *Laws of Manu*, pp. 82-83.

2. ततः सार्वेतमाक्रम्य पञ्चालान् मयूरा तथा ।

यवना त्रृष्णिकान्ताः प्राप्त्यन्ति कुसुमध्यजम् ॥

Kern, *Bṛhmaṇa Saṅhitā*, Introduction, p. 31 et seq.

3. शकानां च ततो राजा धर्थसुधो महात्मः ।

त्रृष्णभावरत्नं पापश्च विनाशे समुपस्थिते ॥ *Bid.*, p. 34.

4. See *The Cambridge History of India*, Vol. I, pp. 626-7.

and customs that made Manu characterise them as an ideal people from whom all other peoples on earth were to imbibe good and decent behaviour.

The people of Sāketa who also passed through the same vicissitudes were almost as bad as those of Surasena, but the latter were worse in as much as they quoted scripture to support their vile uses. Sāketa (otherwise known as Ayodhyā) was the capital of the Kosala country, and this name which had been coming into prominence since the Buddhist times was in use in the second century

Sāketa almost as bad as Surasena      B.C. as we see from its mention in the *Mahābhāgya*<sup>1</sup> and later also we find it in

the passage quoted above from the *Gārgī Samhitā*, we find, therefore, in the Kamasutra this name in use in preference to Ayodhyā. I have shown elsewhere that Sāketa was on the boundary line between the Madhyadeśa and the Prācya division of India.<sup>2</sup>

It is noteworthy that though Vātsyāyana refers to some of the practices of the Āhicchatrikas or the people of Āhicchatra, the ancient capital of northern Pañcāla, of the Pancala people as such he has got nothing to say. He speaks of the Pañcāla country no doubt but it will

Pañcāla people extinct in V.S. time      be observed from the way in which he does so that it was an ancient province to

the achievements of which in the past he is referring, and he does nowhere in his work make any mention of any of the living practices of the Pañcāla people at the time that he lived. Thus he refers to the great Bābhravya Pancala of old from whom he drew his materials but whose work was very little studied in his

1 अर्हाद् यवनः साकेतम्। *Mahābhāgya* on *Pāṇini* III 2, 111. See Goldstucker, *Pāṇini*, p. 230. अयं दन्थाः साकेतसुपतिष्ठते, *Mh.* on *Pāṇini* 1. 3. 2.

2 *Aryan Occupation of Eastern India*, pp. 12-14.

times;<sup>1</sup> he further points out the connection of the Pāñcāla country with the division of the Rgveda into sixty-four chapters and draws an analogy between this fact and the invention of the sixty-four Pāñcāla *kalās* or arts<sup>2</sup> described by Bābhravya. But he notes no peculiarity in the conduct of the Pāñcālas of his day nor does he mention any contemporary practices in the relations between the sexes as he does of the other peoples of India. Evidently the Pāñcāla people who occupied a prominent position among the Vedic Aryas in the period of the Brāhmaṇas and whose country made up one of the sixteen *Mahājanapadas* when the early works of the Theravāda school of the Buddhists were written, had lost their individuality as a separate people; at Ahicchatra, their ancient capital, the people must have been strongly influenced by foreign occupation—as at Mathurā.

Of the countries of the Udgīya or northern division, Vātsyāyana speaks still less than of the Madhyadesa or the Midland proper. He nowhere mentions the Udgīya division by name but he refers to the customs and practices of some of the countries in the Udgīya division and even beyond the northern hills. Of the people on the Himalayas he speaks in general (*Haimavatānam*) without mentioning any particular country or state, saying that among the Haimavatas or people of the Himalayas, "adventurous citizens combining together bribe the sentinels and enter the harem."<sup>3</sup> The absence of specific mention of any

The Udgīya  
Division of  
Northern India

People on the  
Himalayas

1 वाभ्रवीयांश्च सूत्रार्थान् आगमस्य विमृश्य च ।

वातस्यायमश्चकारेद् कामसूत्रं यथाविधि ॥ *Kamusutra*, Berane edition, p. 381.

महाद्वितीय वाभ्रव्यस्य दुरध्येयत्वात् संज्ञिप्य सर्वमर्थमस्येम ग्रन्थेन कामसूत्रम्  
प्रणीतम् । *Ibid.*, p. 7.

2 See *ante*, pp. 3-7.

3 अर्थेन रक्षिण्यसुपृष्ठां साहस्रिकाः संहताः प्रविशन्ति ईमवतानाम् । *Kamus.*, p. 291.

great people on the Himalayas indicates that the earlier hill states like those of the Śākyas, or their neighbours, the Koliyas, were extinct or at least, decadent at the time that the *Kāmasūtra* was written.

Of the countries included in the Udīya division by Indian writers, Vātsyāyana mentions Bāhlīka which the commentary explains as a country in Bāhlīka—  
Polyandry there in V.'s times Uttarāpatha,<sup>1</sup> that is, in the northern region. About the ladies of the Bāhlīka country (*Bāhlīkadeśyāḥ*), the *Kāmasūtra* informs us that they, like the women of the Madhyadeśa, were of decent habits and averse to kissing and similar unclean practices.<sup>2</sup> Vātsyāyana also speaks of a very peculiar custom which the Bāhlīka country had in common with Strīrajya and the province of Grāmanārī: he avers that in these countries several young men were married to a single woman (*ekaikasyāḥ parigrahahbhūtāḥ*) and they were in the same position there as ladies in the harem in other countries.<sup>3</sup> Vātsyāyana does not say exactly that these male spouses were confined in a harem by their lordly wives but that they had the same character as harem-ladies (*antahpurasadharmanāyāḥ*) that is, as the commentary explains, they had all to confine their services to the single lady who was their mistress and had to attend upon her either singly or in batches.<sup>4</sup> This rather unusual custom, no doubt refers to a system of polyandry carried to a refined excess. It was perhaps

1 बाह्लीकदेश्याः उत्तरापथिकाः । *Ibid.* p. 125.

2 मध्यदेश्या आर्प्रायाः शुच्युपचाराश्चुस्वननखदन्तपद्मूर्विरायः । बाह्लीकदेश्याः...त्र ।

*Kāmasūtra*, p. 125.

3 ग्रामनारोविषये खीराज्ये च बाह्लीके बहवो युवानोऽन्तःपुरसधर्माणा पृकैकर्त्याः परिग्रहभूताः । *Ibid.* p. 140.

4 तेषामेकैकाशो युगपच्च...रक्षयेयुः । *Com.* एकैकेन कर्मसाया यौगपथेन चेत्यथः ।

*Ibid.*, p. 140.

on account of the corrupt practices of the Bahlikas that they were characterised in the Great Epic as forming the very dregs of the earth.<sup>1</sup>

It is important to determine the geographical position of the country of Bahlika. The city of Balkh

Bahlika is the country about Balkh, i.e., Bactria in Bactria which makes the closest approach to its name seems to indicate its ancient

location though some scholars are inclined to doubt it and to suggest that it was somewhere near the Kuru land.<sup>2</sup> But that ancient India extended beyond the present north-western frontier seems indisputable from many considerations. The Chinese travellers, for example, found Balkh Indian to all intents and purposes. Yuan Chwang to reach the country which

Yuan-Chwang found India culture in Bactria he calls Po-ho-lo (I-tsing names it Po-ho-lo),<sup>3</sup> travelled some hundreds of

Li from Tokhara, crossed the Oxus and passed through some territories of small extent. He found Indian culture and civilisation predominating here, there being above hundred Buddhist monasteries with more than three thousand brethren, all adherents of the "Small Vehicle" or the Hinayana system. He says that it reached on the north to the Oxus, the Wakhsch of Arab geographers and the Vaksu or Vanksu of Kālidāsa. As we have shown before, Kālidāsa makes

Kālidāsa's Vankṣu is the Oxus in Bactria Raghu meet the Hunas on the banks of the Oxus.<sup>4</sup> Kālidāsa says that Raghu's

horses relieved the fatigue of their long journey by rolling about on the banks of the Vankṣu and shook their shoulders to which were attached filaments

1. मल्ल वृषभ्या बाहुदीक्षा: 1. *Mbt.* V. 33-80.

2. *Camb. Hist.* I. p. 121; *Ind. Ind.* II. p. 62.

3. See Watters, *On Yuan Chwang*, I. p. 109.

4. *Ibid.*, p. 108.

5. See *ante*, p. 23, foot note 4.

of saffron<sup>4</sup>. Amara in his lexicon speaks of the yellow variety of the saffron grown in the Bāhlīka country,<sup>5</sup> and Kṣīrasvāmin, the earliest commentator of Amara, assures us that this Bāhlīka saffron was referred to by Kālidāsa.<sup>6</sup> Yuan Chwang also speaks of saffron (Curcuma=kuṇkuma, saffron) grown in the country about this region.<sup>7</sup> There can, therefore, be no doubt that the country about Balkh and reaching up to the Oxus was known as the Bāhlīka country at the time of Kālidasa, that is, according to our calculations, about two centuries later than Vātsyāyana<sup>8</sup>.

The *Itihāsa-Veda Parīṣīṭa* leaves no doubt that the Vedic Bāhlīka was Bactria in as much as it speaks of the Bāhlīkas in a group *Saka-yarana-Tukhara-Bāhlīkāśca*.<sup>9</sup> These Tukhāras are no doubt the Tokharas (Tu-huo-lo) through whose country Yuan Chwang passed to the country of Balkh.

That Bāhlīka was regarded by Indians as belonging to the Udīya division of the country is seen from Bāhlīka an  
Udīya province Kālidāsa's verse immediately preceding the one we have referred to above where we are told that Raghu on his way to the Vāṅṣu or the Oxus met the Udīyas and inflicted a defeat upon them.<sup>10</sup> This is also clear from a passage

1. विनीताध्वश्चमाष्टाद्य वंकूतीरविचेष्टनैः ।

दुधुर्वाजिनःस्कन्धाहृष्मकुमकेशरान् ॥ *Raghurāsham* IV, 67

2 अथ कुम्मम् । काश्मीरजन्माभिशिखं वरं बाहौकपीतम् ।

*Amarakoṣa*, Oku's edition, p. 110

3 बहीकदेशजं (बाहीकं), यदूरघोरतरदिग्दिवजये—दुधुर्वाजिनः स्कन्धाहृष्मकुमकेशरान् । *Ibid.* p. 110, Commentary.

4 See Watters, I, p. 124.

5 See *ante*, p. 23, foot note 1.

6 41. 3. 8. Ed. by Bölling and Negelein, p. 351.

7 ततः प्रतस्ये कौविरी भास्त्रानिवृश्चुर्दिशम् ।

परैस्त्रिवोदीच्यानुद्दरिष्यन् रसानिव ॥ *Raghurāsham* IV, 66.

in the *Natyasastra* where Bharata tells us that of the seven local dialects (*Sapta bhāṣāḥ*) of India, the *Bahlikābhāṣā* was spoken by the Udcayas and the Khasas and was the language of their own country<sup>1</sup> (*swadeśājā*).

The earliest mention of *Bahlika* in Indian literature viz., in the *Atharva-Veda* shows that it was far away in the north even beyond the *Mujavants*.

*Bahlika in Atharva-Veda is far away in the North*  
O fever," says a hymn of this Veda "Go to the *Mujavants* or to the *Bahlikas*, further off."<sup>2</sup> If *Mujavant* is the name of a hill in or about *Kasmīr*, the *Bahlika* country must have been farther in the north and evidently the same region where we find it in later Indian literature, though Zimmer<sup>3</sup> and the authors of the *Vedic Index*<sup>4</sup> are inclined to doubt it.

The points raised by Zimmer have been answered by Weber<sup>5</sup> and we think, satisfactorily. We however, differ from Roth and Weber who thought that an Iranian tribe was here referred to. The *Bahlikas* are apparently an Indian tribe, or at least an Indo-Iranian tribe that had been under the Indian influence from very early times.

*Bahlika in Kauṭilya and Pāṇini*  
Kauṭilya in his *Arthashastra* mentions three kinds of leather produced in the *Bahli* country<sup>6</sup> and in this form it is mentioned by Kātyāyana in his *Vārtika* to Pāṇini IV, 2,99 where he says that like Kāpiśāyana which is

१ मागध्यवन्तिजा प्राच्या शूस्त्रेन्यध्यं मागधी ।

बाहुका दाकिणात्या च सप्त भाषाः प्रकीर्तिताः ॥

*Natyashastra* XVII 48

बाहुकभाषोदीच्यानां खसानां च स्वदेशाणां । *Ibid.* 48

2. Whitney and Banerji *Atharva-Veda*, Harvard Oriental Series VII p. 260

3. *Alt-Indisches Leben*, pp. 481-9.

4. II, 68.

5. *Berliner Sitzungsberichte* 1893, pp. 985-95.

6. भासरं चीनसी सामूलो च बाहुदेवाः (or बाहुदेवाः) । *See Shāma Sārasvata Āśṭa*

formed by Pāṇini from Kāpiśī, Bālhāyana is formed from the word Bālhī.<sup>1</sup>

In this connection it may be noted that the word *Kāpiśī* in the main sūtra of Pāṇini which Katyayana supplements, refers no doubt to the country of Kāpi-shih of Yuan chwang<sup>2</sup> in the neighbourhood of Bāhlīka; it was famous for its vine-yards now as in ancient times as is shown by the example by which the *Kāśikā-Vṛtti* explains the rule<sup>3</sup> and we observe that the soldiers of Raghu also relieved themselves from their fatigue with the liquor of that country in the rich vine-yards.<sup>4</sup> The Kāśikā-Vṛtti further compares the favourite drink of the Bāhlīkas with those of other well-known Indian tribes and peoples: 'The Uśīnaras drink milk (*Kṣīra*), while the favourite beverage of the Prācyas is *Surā*, that of the Bāhlīkas is *Saurīra*, and that of the Gandhāras *Kasuya*'.<sup>5</sup> In the *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*<sup>6</sup> we find mention of

The Kuru king  
Pratiṣṭya  
succeeded to the  
Bāhlīka throne of  
his Maternal uncle

Bahlika-Pratiṣṭya who is called a Kauravya King (Kauravyo rājā), and the same king apparently is the Mahārājā Bāhlīka Pratiṣṭya<sup>7</sup> of the Great Epic. We are told in the *Udyogaparva* that of the three sons of Pratiṣṭya, the eldest

edition, p. 79. *Bāhleyah* is the reading adopted by *Bhattacharjya* in his *Tīkha on Arthaśāstra*, p. 42 in *J. B. O. R. S.*, Vol. XI, pt. II; he explains it as a part of the Himalayas: त्रिविश्वं बाह्वेयमाह, सामूरभित्यादि । बाह्वा हिमवदेकदेशः ।

1. Cf. Weber, *Ind. Stud.* XII, p. 363.

2. Watters, I, p. 122.

3. कापिशीशब्दात् अकृ प्रत्ययो भवति शैचिकः । फकारो डीर्घः । कापिशायन मधु । कापिशायनी द्राक्षा । *Kāśikā-vṛtti* on Pāṇini, iv. 2, 99.

4. विनयन्तेस्म तथोदा मधुभिर्विजयश्चमम् ।

आस्तीर्णाजिनरकाष्ठ द्राक्षावलयमूभिषु ॥ *Raghuvāñśam*, iv. 65.

5. क्षीरपाणा उशीनराः । छरोपाणाः प्राच्याः । सौवीरपाणा वाहीकाः । क्षायपाणा गन्धाराः । *Kāśikā-vṛtti* on Pāṇini, viii. 4, 9.

6. ततु ह बहिकं प्रातिपीयः...कौरव्यो राजा । *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*, XII. 9.3.3.

7. महाराजो वाहिकः प्रातिपेयः कच्छिद्वान् कुशली सूतपुत्र ।

Devāpi being rejected by the representatives of the people—the Paurajānapada—went to the forest and became an ascetic and the second Bāhikā, obtained the very rich kingdom of his maternal uncle and abdicated the paternal throne in favour of the youngest Śāntanu.<sup>1</sup> He fought with his Bāhikas on the side of Duryodhana. This explains how a Kaurava prince came to rule over the Bāhikā people in the distant north and shows that in ancient times the Kurus were connected by matrimonial bonds with ruling families in the North-west, even beyond the mountain-barriers; Pāndu's marriage with Mādrī and that of Dhṛitarāṣṭra with Gāndhārī shows the intimacy of the relations between the Kurus and the Kṣatriya tribes in the North-west. In fact the Great Epic shows that the kingdoms on the North-west frontier and beyond—Mudra, Gāndhāra, Kāmboja, Bāhikā—were looked upon as Indian provinces and Vatsyāyana shows that this feeling continued so late as the third century A.C when the Kamasutra was written.

Greek occupation of the country as well as inter-mixture with other foreign peoples had considerably modified the customs and practices of the Bāhikas from the moral standard of the Indians thus making them hateful to the latter, so that their rulers are placed among the barbarous and sinful kings who will rule on earth on the advent of the Kaliyuga,<sup>2</sup> and the people

1. बाहिको मातुलकुल त्वचा । राज्यं समाधितः ।  
पितृन् भातृन् परित्यज्य प्राप्तवान् परमर्द्धिभृतः ॥  
बाहिकेन त्वचुजातः बान्तनुर्लोकविभ्रुतः ।  
पितर्युपरते राजन् राजा राज्यमकारथलः ॥

*Mbt. V. 141. 27-8. See JMAS 1910 p. 72*

2. बहवो म्लेच्छराजानः पृथिव्यां मनुजाधिपः ।  
मृषानुशासिनः पापा मृषावाहपरायणः ॥  
अन्ध्राः शकाः पुलिष्ट्राश्च थवनाश्च नराधिपाः ।  
काम्बोजा बाहिकाः वाराहस्तथाभीरा नरोऽप्तम् ॥

*JG. III. 108. 34-35*

are considered, as we have seen before, as the very dregs of the earth.

In the Great Epic itself there is evidence that some of the Bāhlīkas at least were Asuras, that is, Asura-worshippers or Iranians : we are told of a very powerful king of the Bāhlīkas Darada by name who was a *Mahāsura* or a great Asura and this Darada, the Bāhlīka, is praised highly by Śiśupāla, an Indian sovereign with Asura tendencies.<sup>1</sup>

The *Uttarakānda* of the *Ramayana* records a very interesting and important tradition which goes to show that one of the most powerful ruling families of India was originally derived from the Bāhlīka country.<sup>2</sup> It is a variant of the well-known myth of *Ila* which is found in all the *Purāṇas* and both the Epics. We are told here that *Ila*, a son of the Prajapati Kardama, was the king of the Bāhlīka country.<sup>3</sup> Then the story goes on to relate how he was turned into a woman and passed by the name of *Ilā*, and when in this condition, had a son Purūravas Aila, by Budha, the son

1. अष्टरामान्तु यः सूर्यः श्रीमांश्चैव महासुरः ।

दरदो नाम बाहूको वरः सर्वमहीक्षिताम् ॥ *Mbt.* I. 67 58.

दरदं स्तुहि बाहूकं इमं पार्थिवसत्तमम् ।

जायमानेन येनेयम् अभवद् दारिता भारी ॥ *Ibid.* II. 44, 8.

In the Great Epic, Bāhlīka is sometimes confounded with Bāhlīka or the region where the sindhu flows with its five branches, including the Madra country over which Salya ruled, and Mādri is once called Bāhlīka ( I. 125, 21 ) and Nilakantha in his gloss on *Mbt.* V. 89, 80, makes the same mistake :

बाहूकः “पञ्चानां सिन्धुषष्टानां नदीनां यत्र सङ्गमः । बाहूका नाम ते देशः ।”

2. *Uttarakānda*, Ch 87.

3. श्रूयते हि पुरा सौम्य कर्दमस्य प्रजापतेः ।

पुत्रो बाहूकवरः श्रीमानिलो नाम सुधार्मिकः ॥

of Soma, the moon-god. He ultimately recovered his male form by virtue of an Aśvamedha sacrifice performed under the auspices of his father, Kardama. Then the story tells us that Ila gave up Bāhlika, placing his first son, Śaśavindu on the throne of that country and himself founded a new city, *Pratiṣṭhāna-pura* by name in the Madhyadesa and set up a kingdom there. After his death Pururavas Aila ascended the throne left vacant by Ila.<sup>1</sup> This *Pratiṣṭhānapura* was, as we know from the Purāṇas and Kālidāsa's *Vikramorvaśiyam*,<sup>2</sup> situated at the junction of the Ganges with the Yamuna, that is, was identical with Prayuga or Allahabad. The story as related here is virtually the same as in the other Purāṇas, but the importance of this version lies in its statement that Ila was originally a ruler of the Bāhlika country and at last set up a kingdom in the Midland which was the centre of Vedic Aryan culture. The mythical character of the tradition tracing back the descent of some of the most important ruling families of India up to Soma, shows that it relates to the very earliest times

A Reminiscence of the Aryan settlement in India and its connection with Bāhlika or Bactria may suggest that it is a reminiscence of the times when the Aryan race was dwelling in its cradle-land in Central Asia.

१. राजा तु बाहुसुतसूज्य मध्यदेशे शानुतमम् ।

निवेशयामास पुरं प्रतिष्ठानं यशस्करम् ॥

शशविन्दुश्च राजविर्बाह्यः परपुरजयः ।

प्रतिष्ठाने इतो राजा प्रजापतिसुतो वली ॥ *Ibid.*, II, 80, 31-34.

२. भद्रवदीपे भाईरहीषे जउ गा संगमविसेस रायणोह सलिले ओसो अन्तस्त स विष्णु अत्ताण्ड वहूठानस्स लिहा भरणा भूदे राष्ट्रसियो भूमि उबद्विष्ट । *The  
Vikramorvaśiyam* Edited by S. P. Pandit, 3rd edition, revised by B. R. Apte, Bombay, 1901, Act II.

Another country where, as we have seen above, men  
 श्रीराज्या—<sup>the</sup> were kept in the same position as ladies  
 Woman-governed  
 State—a polyan-  
 drous country near  
 Bāhlika      indicates, here the women perhaps exercised  
 power in state affairs and apparently polyandry was the  
 rule here giving the women a greater preponderance  
 than in Bāhlika or any other country; that it was not  
 entirely mythical is proved by the details about the  
 character of the ladies that Vātsyāyana gives in two  
 passages besides the one quoted above. One of them  
 states that in Strīrājya artificial means of sexual  
 enjoyment were resorted to by the women, and the other  
 tells us of the character of women in the king's harem.<sup>1</sup>  
 Vātsyāyana's mention of the Strīrājya along with  
 Bāhlika and the existence of the same sort of relations  
 between the sexes in the two countries would seem to  
 indicate that they were situated in the same region. The  
 other two passages where Vātsyāyana mentions Strīrājya  
 in his work<sup>2</sup> do not offer any clear indication of its  
 geographical position. Nor does the Commentary  
 help us here. The comment on one of the  
 passages only gives a synonym for Strīrājya  
 viz., Stripuri, and the other tells us that the Strīrājya  
 was to the West of the Vajravantadesa or Vaṅgarakta<sup>3</sup>  
 about whose position we know nothing. The *Brhat*  
*Samhitā* of Varahamihira, however, supports us in the  
 conjecture that it is about the north-western frontier of  
 India that we have to look for this country of women,

1 दृढप्रहरणयोगिन्यः खरवेगा एव अपद्वयग्रधानाः श्रीराज्ये कोशसार्या च ।  
*Kamasutra*, p. 126.

तथा प्रवेणिभिरेव शातिसम्बन्धिभिर्नान्यैरप्युज्यम्ते सत्रैराजकानाम् । *Ibid.* p. 294.

2 *Ibid.* p. 126 and p. 294.

3 श्रीराज्यः श्रीपुरी तथ भवानाम् । *Ibid.* p. 295. वज्रवर्क्षदेशात् परिच्छेन श्रीराज्यं ।  
*Ibid.* p. 126. Durgaprasad in the Jaipur edition p. 180. reads— वज्रवर्क्षदेशात् परिच्छेन ।

in as much as he definitely asserts that the Strīrājya belonged to the north-western quarter of India along with the Tuśāras (Tokhāra of Yuan Chwang), the Aśmakas, the Madras and similar other tribes in that region.<sup>1</sup> *Parāśara* who belonged to a much earlier period and from whose *Siddhānta* Varāhamihira borrowed his statements, says expressly that in the north-west lived the Tuśāras and other tribes, and beyond them was the Strīrājya<sup>2</sup> leaving no doubt that the Strīrājya was situated in the farthest quarter of the northwestern district. In the corresponding passage in the *Märkandeya-Purāṇa* we have a mention, in the north-western quarter, of the country of *Strīvāhya* which is evidently a misreading of the name Strīrājya. In the *Mahābhārata* we are told that at the *srayāṇprara* of a daughter of Citraṅgada, the King of Kaliṅga, came Mahārāja Sugāla, the ruler of the Strīrājya,<sup>4</sup> but nothing can be ascertained about the position of the country from this mention, we can only be so far certain that the Strīrājya was looked upon as an integral part of India.

Yuan Chwang describes a country in the Himalayas far away to the north of the region about *Gangādvāra*

१ दिशि परिच्छमोत्तरस्यां मायाद्व्यतुक्षारसालहसमद्वा: ।  
अश्वकुम्भतहस्तीराज्यनृसिंहवनस्याः ॥

*Bṛhat-Saṁhitā*, XIV, 22. Edited by Kern, 1863.

२ तथा च पराशरः । अथ परिच्छमोत्तरस्या दिशि गिरिमतिवेष्टुमतिरक्षमति-  
फलगुलुकमायाद्व्यैकने त्रमस्तुक्षारसालमङ्गलहस्तीराज्यनृसिंहवनस्याः । परमतः स्तीराज्यमिति । *Bṛhat-Saṁhitā* Vol. I. p. 292;  
edited by Mahāmahopādhyāya Sudhākara Drivedi with the commentary of  
Bhātottala in two volumes. The Vizianagram Sanskrit Series, No. 12.

३ कुम्भता लद्वहाश्वैव स्तीराज्या वालिकास्तथा । *Märkandeya-Purāṇam*, 58, 58.

४ सुगालरच महाराजः स्तीराज्याधिपतिरच च । *Sāntiparva* iv, 7.

or Hardwar. Thus he goes on, "To the north of this country (Brahmapura), and in the Great Snow Mountains, was the Suvarṇa-gotra country. The superior gold which it produced gave the country its name. This was called the 'Eastern woman's country' (that is, of the Chinese) so called because it was ruled by a succession of women. The husband of the queen was king, but he did not administer the government. The men attended only to the suppression of revolts and the cultivation of the fields. This country reached on the east to T'u-fan (Tibet), on the north to Khoten, and on the west to San-p'o-ha (Malasa)."<sup>1</sup>

The boundaries of this country as given by the Chinese pilgrim show that it lay near to the Tibetan frontier and it is seen from his account that there was a so called king of the country who was rather the Prince consort, and probably *Mahārāja Sugāla*, the *Strirājyādhipati* of the *Mahābhārata* was one such *king* by courtesy. We have no reason to think that this *Strirājya* was entirely mythical because we find that *Strirāj* or polyandry is still prevalent about these regions, specially in the higher Himalayas. Thus we read in the Census Report,<sup>2</sup> "Polyandry or the custom of a woman having more husbands than one at one time, is peculiar to the Himalayas. It exists in the Kulu sub-division, the Bashahr state (Simla Hill States) and to a smaller extent in the Nahan, Mandi and Suket states." Again we have here, " Polyandry is confined to the upper Himalayas—i.e. Spiti, Lahul and Siraj in Kulu, Chamba Lahul in Chamba, Siraj in Mandi, Rampur, Chini (including Kavarwar) and the upper minor states in Bashahar (State) and the Transgiri part of the Nahan State."<sup>3</sup> Similar cus-

1 Watters, I. p. 330.

2 1911, Vol. XIV, by Pandit Harakishan Kaul. B. B., C. I. E., p. 287.

3 *Ibid.* p. 289.

toms are also prevalent among the Brahmans and Rajputs in Kumaon.<sup>1</sup>

The *Rājatarāṅginī*<sup>2</sup> mentions Strīrājya as one of the countries conquered by King Lalitāditya (first half of the 8th century A.C.) who we are told after vanquishing the Tukhāras who lived, as we have seen from Yuan-Chwang's account, in the immediate vicinity of Balkh or the Bāhlīka country, conquered the country of the Amazons and proceeded to the land of the Uttarakurus<sup>3</sup> which according to the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*<sup>4</sup> and the usual tradition was on the other side of the Himalayas, so that here it is seen that Strīrājya is considered to have been in the extreme north-west so as to agree with the location assigned to it by the *Brhat Saṃhitā*. If Strīrājya here is purely mythical like the Uttarakurus,<sup>4</sup> yet it is significant as a record of the tradition that the country is considered to have been in the far north. But the *Rājatarāṅginī*<sup>5</sup> furnishes further details which would lead one to suppose that this Strīrājya of the *Rājatarāṅginī* might not have been entirely a mythical land, a product of the poet's imagination merely. Lalitāditya is said to have placed an image of Nr̥hari (Viṣṇu) in the Strīrājya.<sup>6</sup> Again, Lalitāditya's grandson, Jayapīṭha, who reigned towards the end of the eighth century, is also credited with the conquest of Strīrājya by Kalhana who says "wonderful it is that after he had conquered a territory in the 'land of the Amazons' (Strīrājya) the [other] kings esteemed [still

In *Rājatarāṅginī*  
Strīrājya  
is near Bāhlīka

1 Bhagavanlal Indraji, *Ind. Ant.* VIII, p. 88.

2 Stein's *Rājatarāṅginī*, (Trans.), Vol. I. pp. 186—188. Tarāṅga IV. verses 165-175.

3 परेण हिमवन्तम् । *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, VIII. 14.

4 See Stein, *Rājatarāṅginī*, Vol. I, p. 187, foot note.

5 *Rājatarāṅginī*, IV. 185.

more] highly his victory over the group of his senses (indriyagrāma).<sup>1</sup> Again he tells us of Jayapīda's son, the debauchee Lalitapīda, that "this king who was not satisfied with a few women, and who was full of violent desires, thought Jayapīda an imbecile for having left the 'land of the Amazons' (Strīrajya) after he had conquered it."<sup>2</sup>

Bhāṭṭasvāmin, the celebrated commentator of the *Arthaśāstra*, quotes a verse in which Strīrajya forms one of the countries which contained Precious Minerals come from Strīrajya mines of precious stones.<sup>3</sup> This verse has not been located as yet but it shows at least that in India Strīrajya was looked upon as an actual country and not as a mere mythical land.

The Strīrajya of Vātsyāyana, therefore, does not appear to have been a mythical land, but it must have been a state where polyandry was prevalent and where there was a king, apparently of the type described by Yuan-Chwang and it might have been located in the Himalayas to the north of the Panjab, but more probably in the region of the north-west beyond the Himalayas where the *Brhat Samhitā* and the *Rājataranginī* place it.

Vātsyāyana himself speaks of another country where also similar customs prevailed ; He calls it the

Gramanari-viṣaya  
Gramanari-  
Viṣaya—  
another polyan-  
drous district

*Gramā-nari-viṣaya*, the 'District of village women' which appears rather to be a descriptive epithet than a proper name.

The Commentary explains that this district was situated near the Strīrajya farther away.<sup>4</sup> It is

1 *Ibid.* IV. 587.

2 *Ibid.* IV. 666.

3 विन्द्यो विद्युरगैसो महायो विन्द्योपलक्ष्योहेषः ।

स्त्रीराज्यम्बेति पुलस्तस्याकरभूमयोऽभिहिता ॥

*Bhāṭṭasvāmin on Arthaśāstra*, p. 81. *J. B. O. R. S.*, Vol. XI. Pt. II.

4 श्रीराज्यसमीप एव परतो भास्मनारीविषयः । *Kāmasūtra*, p. 140.

nowhere else mentioned by Vātsyayana. Most probably it formed a group of villages where polyandrous people lived and apparently they did not form an independent state like the *Strīrājya*.

Another country in the north-west of India which Vātsyāyana refers to, is that through which flow the six

The Land of the Six Rivers rivers including the Sindhu or the Indus.<sup>1</sup>

The people living in this region, says Vātsyayana, were fond of the filthy practice of *Auparistaka*; that they were sexually very corrupt is borne out by the character given them by Karpa in the *Mahābhārata*<sup>2</sup> which also describes the country almost in the very same words as Vātsyāyana<sup>3</sup> and designates the people as *Bāhikas*. This Bāhika country is condemned in the strongest terms in the *Mahābhārata* and is declared as unfit for habitation by Aryas<sup>4</sup> showing apparently that at the time of the Great Epic itself, the people of the Punjab were at a far lower stage of culture than that of the Vedic Indo-Aryans.

This land of the five rivers with the Indus as the sixth does not exactly belong to the *Udīcya* division, but to the *Pratīcya* or Western Division; yet we mention it here on account of its affinity with the *Udīcya* countries and in fact, in the *Mahābhārata*, its ancient name Bāhika is sometimes confused with *Bahlīka*, but that they were not the same country is quite apparent both from the descriptions of the two countries in the Epic itself, as well as the separate mention by Vātsyāyana

1. सिन्धुषष्ठानां च नदीनामन्तरालीया औपरिष्वसात्म्याः । *Ibid.*, p. 128.

2. *Karṇaparva*, ch. 44 ff.

3. पञ्चानां सिन्धुषष्ठानां नदीनां येऽन्तराभिताः ।

तात्र वर्मवाहानशुचीश वाहीकाश परिवर्त्तयेत् ॥ *Mbt.* viii, 44, 7.

4. पञ्च नदो वहस्त्वेता यत्र निःसूत्य पृष्ठेतात् ।

आरहा नाम वाहीका व तेषाम्बर्वे द्वारहृ क्षेत ॥ *Ibid.*, viii, 44, 40.

of the two countries in sūtras<sup>1</sup> closely following each other in the same connection.

Of the Eastern or the Prācyā division of India Vātsyāyana mentions several countries and usages as well the general name *Prācyā* itself as a designation for the whole of the district. We have already referred to his eulogium of the Prācyā people who, as we have seen, unlike the Saurasenas and the Sāketas were free from some of the grossest forms of sexual abuse.<sup>2</sup> The Commentary here explains that the Prācyas are people to the east of the *Āṅga* country, but here it is inconsistent with its own statement elsewhere; we have seen that according to the Commentary the limits of Vātsyāyana's *Madhyadeśa* are the same as those of Vasiṣṭha in his *Dharmasūtra* and hence the Prācyā district must lie to the east of *Prayāga*, or Allahabad, where that *Madhyadeśa* ends. As we shall show below, the Commentator's knowledge of Eastern India was far from satisfactory or reliable, and there is no reason to question that Vātsyāyana has used the word *Prācyā* in its usual sense since the Vedic times, viz., the region from Allahabad to the farthest eastern limits of India.

In describing the abuses in the king's harem Vātsyāyana says that among the Prācyas, a number of ladies—nine or ten in number—would combine and hide a common lover against discovery;<sup>3</sup> besides, he refers to some general customs prevalent in Prācyā countries

The Prācyā or Eastern Division

1 Sūtras 22 and 25, pp. 125 and 126.

2 तत्त्वाद्यास्त्वौपरिष्ठकमाचरन्ति न ताभिः सह संसुज्यन्ते प्राच्याः ।

*Kāmasūtra*, p. 166.

3 संहस्य नव दशेत्वेकैकं युवानं प्रच्छादयन्ति प्राच्यानामित्येवं परस्पर्यः प्रकुर्वीत ।

*Ibid.* p. 295.

(*Prācyopcarah*) with respect to the conduct of the king towards his many wives<sup>1</sup> and also to the temporary so-called marriage of the daughter of a courtesan by a Nāgaraka.<sup>2</sup>

Of the countries included in the Prācyā division, Vātsyāyana mentions *Kośalā*, but as he speaks of it only once, in describing a practice which it had in common with the *Strīrājya*,<sup>3</sup> we cannot be sure whether it is the northern Kośala which was a part of the Prācyā region, or the Kośala in the south. But Vātsyāyana mentions, as we have already seen, Sāketa, the capital of the northern Kośala country in his time.

The country of *Kāśi* is also referred to by Vātsyāyana when speaking of the *Kāśi-rāja* Jayatsena who was murdered by his master of the horse when out on an affair of love.<sup>4</sup>

Vātsyāyana mentions three countries of the Prācyā Division, *Vāṅga*, *Aṅga* and *Kalinga* in one passage where he refers to the love-  
and *Kalinga* episodes of the royal harem. He says that

Brahmins of the city under the pretext of giving flowers to the ladies enter the harem with the knowledge of the king, and speak with them from behind a curtain, and from such conversations union afterwards takes place.<sup>5</sup> It is in his notes on this passage that the

१ राजानश्च कृपाशीला विनाशपि भावयोगाद्यायोजितापद्यव्या यावदर्थमेक्या राजा । वृद्धिभरपि गच्छन्ति पस्यां तु प्रीतिवासकम्भतुर्वा तत्राभिप्रायतः प्रवर्तन्त इति प्राप्योपचाराः । *Ibid.*, pp. 289-290.

२ पाणिप्रहणश्च संवत्सरमव्यभिचार्यस्ततो यथाकामिनी स्यात् । *Ibid.*, p. 865.

३ दद्वप्रहणानयोगिन्यः खरेगा पूर्व आपद्यप्रधानाः खीराज्ये कोशलायां च । *Ibid.*, p. 126.

४ काशिराजे जयत्सेनमवाध्यक्ष इति । *Ibid.*, p. 287.

५ See Burton's Translation, Reprint 1883, p. 285.

commentator, Yaśodhara, manifests his absolute ignorance of the geography of eastern India to which we have already referred. Thus he says that the Vaṅgas lived to the east of the Lauhitya or the Brahmaputra, the Aṅgas to the east of the Mahānādī and the Kalingas to the south of the Gauḍa-visaya, and that the Gaudas themselves were a Prācya people living in Kāmarūpa.<sup>1</sup> Except with regard to the situation of Kaliṅga which may be said to be practically correct, all his other locations are absurd showing that he had no personal acquaintance with this part of India.

Gauḍa is mentioned several times by Vatsyayana and appears to have been a separate kingdom from Vaṅga at the time that he wrote ; thus he makes a separate mention of the love-intrigues in the king's harem in the two countries, though they are virtually of the same character, in as much as he says that among the Gaudas these intrigues were carried on [with Brahmins, relatives and servants etc.,<sup>2</sup> that is, with men who had ordinarily access to the harem as in Vaṅga. In two other passages Vatsyayana refers to the sense of beauty of the men and the softness and delicacy of the women of Gauḍa : thus while comparing the various fashions of dressing the nails by men in different parts of India, he says, " Large nails, which give grace to the hands, and attract the heart of women from their appearance, are possessed by the Bengalees."<sup>3</sup> Burton here translates 'Gaudānām' by Bengalees. In another passage where Vatsyayana compares the characteristics of the women

1. गौडाः कामस्पकाः प्राच्यविशेषाः । वङ्गा लौहित्यात् पूर्वेषां । अङ्गा महान्द्याः पूर्वेषां । कलिङ्गा गौडीविशेषाहृजित्येन । *Kāmarūpa*, p. 225.

2. अश्वरौभित्रै भृत्यै दर्शनचेतैश्च गौडानाम् । *Ibid.*, p. 264.

3. Burton's Translation, Reprint 1883, pp. 52-3.

of various parts of India, he speaks of the ladies of Gauḍa as soft and sweet in their speech, full of love and tender in their bodies.<sup>1</sup> Here the Commentary explains *Gauḍyah* as *Pūrvadeśabhabāh*, and evidently Gauḍa of Vātsyāyana is northern Bengal. Vātsyāyana has separately mentioned *Vāṅga* showing that it formed a separate kingdom comprising the eastern districts of modern Bengal.

Gauḍa as the name of a city, a country, or a people, is found from very early times in Indian literature including the works of Pāṇini and Kauṭilya, and almost everywhere it appears to refer to Bengal. But as some scholars have expressed a doubt about it, the question deserves to be very carefully examined. Cunningham expressed the opinion that the ancient Gauḍa was "only a sub-division of Uttara-Kosala"<sup>2</sup> as against the mediaeval city of Gauḍa in Bengal.<sup>3</sup> Again, the late Mr. A. M. T. Jackson also, in connection with an inscription wherein the Rāṣtrakūṭa king, Kṛṣṇa II, is declared to have been *Gaudānām rinaya-vratārppana-guruḥ*,<sup>4</sup> observes "It is too often assumed that in the tenth century and earlier the name *Gauḍa* means Bengal. I think, however, that this is a mistake which is responsible for much mis-reading of Indian History. It was, I think, Professor R. G. Bhandarkar who first expressed doubts on the point, and suggested that Gauḍa meant Gonda in Oudh. The key to the riddle is to be found in Alberuni's notes on the 'Voelkertafel' of Varāhamihira (Sachau's Alberuni's

1. सूत्रभाष्यायोऽनुरागवत्यो नृद्वज्ञायश्च गौड्यः। *Kamasutra*, p. 127

2. *Reports of the Archaeological Survey of India*, Vol. 1, p. 827

3. *Ibid.*, p. 828.

4. *Epigraphia Indica*, IV, p. 283.

Gauḍa is Bengal  
Everywhere  
in Indian  
Literature

Doubts  
expressed by  
Cunningham  
and Jackson—  
entirely  
baseless

India, I, 300) which informs us that Guḍa = Tāñeshar. This explains why the Sārasvat Brahmins of the holy Sarasvatī are the Gauḍas *par excellence*, and why Gauḍa and Vāṅga are mentioned separately in the Baroda Grant of 812 A.D. The Gauḍas whom Kṛṣṇa II 'humbled' or 'schooled' were therefore the rulers of 'Hindustan' in the narrow sense, or in other words the Gurjaras themselves.<sup>1</sup> Most of these opinions expressed here by Mr. Jackson can be clearly shown to be absolutely wrong. In the first place, as regards the tenth century, no serious historian now doubts that the Gauḍa emperor Devapala who was the son of Rāṇadevī,

a sister of Kṛṣṇa II,<sup>2</sup> belonged to Bengal  
Gāndesvara  
Devapāla is and not to the Gonda district of Cunningham.  
Ruler of  
Bengal in  
the 10th Century.  
ham or Thanesar of Mr. Jackson, so that  
this point need not be expatiated upon.

Devapāla is called *Gauḍesvara* in Gurava Misra's inscription on the Garuda-pillar at Bādal in the Dinajpur district in nothern Bengal,<sup>3</sup> and the Gauḍas whom Kṛṣṇa II could have taught a lesson were the people under this relative of his. In the Baroda Grant of 812 A.D.—no doubt he refers to the Baroda copper-plates, dated 734 Śaka-samvat of Rāstrakūṭa Karka II—*Gaudendra* and *Vāṅgapati* are separately mentioned,<sup>4</sup> because north western and eastern Bengal formed different kingdoms at the time, while the very fact that they are mentioned together shows that these kings were close neighbours. Their defeat by the Pratibhāra-Gurjara king Vatsaraja had evidently been obtained before Gopala, the founder of the Pāla dynasty of Bengal,

1 *J.R.A.S.* 1905, pp. 163-4.

2 See *Gauḍalekhamāṭā*, pp. 86-87.

3 *Ibid.*, p. 74.

4 गौड-वङ्गपति-निर्जय-तुर्विवदध सद्-गुजरात-वर-दिग्गंगलतां च यस्य । *Jnd.*

*Ant. XII.* p. 160, line 9.

consolidated Gauḍa, Vāṅga and Magadha into one great empire.

The *Rājatarāṅgiṇī* offers clear proof that so far west as in Kashmir also in the eighth and ninth centuries of the Christian era, Gauḍa was considered to be in Bengal.<sup>1</sup> The *Rājatarāṅgiṇī* refers to Gauḍa in Bengal. Thus we read of King Lalitāditya who reigned in the early years of the eighth century, that on his expedition of conquest, after vanquishing Yaśovarman of Kānyakubja, "his army proceeded with ease to the Eastern Ocean. His elephants, which there saw the land of their birth, were only with difficulty induced by the abuse of their impatient drivers to march on from the *Kaliṅga* country. Numberless elephants joined him from the Gauḍa lands as if attracted by friendship for the elephant [carrying] the couch of Laxmī, who was attached [to the king]. When his advanced troops reached the Eastern Ocean, it seemed as if the trunks of the hosts of his war-elephants grasped in the waves the hair of the Ocean."<sup>2</sup> Here we find that Gauḍa was near the Eastern Ocean in the neighbourhood of the Kaliṅga country, so that it was no doubt Bengal. In the same chapter, Kalhana also speaks of the assassination of the Gauḍa King who had sought refuge in Kashmir and of the wonderful bravery shown by that King's followers.<sup>3</sup> Again we are told that Lalitāditya's grandson, Jayapīṭha who reigned in the last half of the eighth century, while travelling incognito "entered the city of Paundravardhana, subject to the

1 *Introduction to Rājatarāṅgiṇī*, p. 35.

2 *Rājatarāṅgiṇī*, IV. 148-149.

3 *Ibid.* IV. 328-335.

Kings of Gauda and [at that time] protected by a prince called Jayanta,"<sup>1</sup> and further that Jayāpīda married the daughter of Jayanta and showed there his valour by defeating even without preparation, the five Gauda chiefs, and by making his father-in law their sovereign."<sup>2</sup> Here the fact that the Gaudas were ruling at Paundravardhana shows that the Gauda country was there in Bengal. Whether these events are to be regarded as based upon actual historical facts, or as creations of the poet's fancy, there can be no doubt that there was some historical tradition behind it and it is clear that there were some relations between Kashmir and Gauda in the eighth and ninth centuries and that this Gauda was in Bengal.

Coming to the seventh century we have the evidence of *Harṣacarita* wherein we find that

In the 7th Century  
Harṣacarita shows  
Gauda is Bengal Rājyavardhana of Thaneswar which Mr. Jackson considers to be identical with the

Gauda country, was killed by the Gauda-  
king (*Gauḍādhipa*)<sup>3</sup> Śaśāṅka, who, Yuan Chwang tells us, was the ruler of Kārpasuvarma in Bengal.<sup>4</sup> There can therefore be no room for doubting that in the seventh century A. C. Gauda was a part of Bengal.

That Gauda meant Bengal in the sixth century also is proved to a certainty by the Haraha inscription

In the 6th Century  
Haraha Inscription  
says Gauda is  
on the sea of the reign of the Maukhari King Isānavarman of 554 A. C. (Vikramasamvat 611) stating that this sovereign made "the

Gaudas living on the seashore, in future to remain within

1 *Ibid.*, IV. 421.

2 *Ibid.*, IV. 46, 8.

3 गौदाधिपेन...भातर व्यापादितमश्रीवोत् । *Harṣacarita: Ucchāra* VI; I. C.  
Vidyāsagara's Edition, p. 161.

4 Watters, I. p. 348; Beal, *Buddhist Records*, p. 210.

their proper realm.”<sup>1</sup> The Gaudas on the sea-coast could certainly not have lived near the hills in the Gonda district.

Varāhamihira who lived about the same time as King Isānavarman,—that is, the first half of the sixth

Varāhamihira  
(6th Century)  
places Gauda  
near Paundra  
and Utkala

century after Christ<sup>2</sup>—in his *Bṛhat Saṃhitā*, also places Gauḍa in the immediate neighbourhood of Paundra in the eastern region,<sup>3</sup> and Vāṅga and Kaliṅga in the

south-east. He thus gives a correct position for Gauḍa and Vāṅga, and the Taneshar of Mr. Jackson is not Gauḍa but Guḍa, which again, is only the second half of the name of a country the full designation of which according to Varāhamihira<sup>4</sup> was *Pāṇḍu-guḍa*, as may be seen from the way in which Bhattotpala reads the passage in his celebrated commentary on the *Bṛhatsaṃhitā*;<sup>5</sup> the error of dividing the single name into two is most probably not of Albiruni who

1 कृत्वा वायत्मौचितस्थलभुवो गौडान् समुद्राव्यान् आध्यासिष्ट नतस्तीश्व-  
चरणः सिद्धासनं यो जिती । *Ib. Ind. XIV.* Translated by Hirananda Sastri. M. A. *Ib.*  
*Ind. XIV.*, p. 126.

2 Thibaut. *Pāṇcasiddhāntikā Introduction*, p. I.V.

3 अथ पूर्वस्थामञ्जन्मूर्खभद्रजपथमाल्यवद्विरयः ।

व्याप्तसुखाद्यकर्णटचान्मपुरा: शूर्तकर्णादिच ॥

स्वसमग्निविरगिरिमिथिलसमतोद्राम्बवदनदन्तुरकाः ।

प्राग्नुज्योतिष्ठानौहित्यक्षीरोदसमुद्रपुर्णादाः ॥

उद्यगिरिभद्रगौडकपौयद्रोतकलकाशिमेक्षाम्बद्धाः ।

एकपद्मामसिसिककोशलका वर्धमानश्च ॥

*Bṛhatsaṃhitā XIV, 5-7 Edited by Kern.*

4 आप्नेष्यां दिशि कोशलकलिङ्गवङ्गोपवङ्गजराङ्गाः । *Ib. XIV. 8.*

5 गौरप्रीतोद्देहिकपाण्डुगुडाश्वस्थपान्वासाः । *Ib. XIV. 3.*

6 गौरप्रीताः । उद्देहिकाः । पाण्डुगुडाः । श्रवत्याः । पान्वासाः । *Bṛhatsaṃhitā*  
with the Commentary of Bhattotpala. Vol. I. p. 286. Edited by Mahāmahopādhyāya  
Sudhakara Dvivedi.

was well acquainted with the commentary,<sup>1</sup> but of the Translator.

The same location of Gauḍa is also assigned in the work of Parasara (one of the very early Indian astronomers) who enumerates the countries in the places Gauḍa east in the order Utkala, Pundra, Karvata, and Udra near Samatata and Udra Samatata, Udra, and Gaudaka.<sup>2</sup> Certainly this indicates clearly, without any doubt, that with the guidance of Parasara we have to look for Gauḍaka in the same region as Pundra, Samatata, and Udra, that is, in Bengal and not in the Gonda district. We must also here note carefully what Kern points out with regard to Parasara's work : "Interesting for the geography of India is an entire chapter which Varāhamihira only changing the form, but leaving the matter almost intact, has given in the 14th chapter of Bṛihat Saṁhitā ; therefore we have to consider that chapter as really representing the geography of Parasara-tantra or perhaps yet more ancient works."<sup>3</sup> Parasara's exact date cannot be ascertained but as he places the Yavanas,—Greeks—in south-western India, he probably belongs to the period about the beginning of the Christian era to which period Kern assigns Garga, another ancient astronomer of the same type as Parasara.

In the fourth century before Christ we meet with a mention of Gauḍa in the *Arthaśāstra* of Kauṭilya who describes a variety of silver called "Gaudika which is the

<sup>1</sup> *Albiruni's India*, I, p. 298. Translated by Sachau.

<sup>2</sup> उत्कलपुण्ड्रकर्णिसमतटोद्गोडक...। MM. Divedi's edition of *Bṛhatśāṁhitā* vol I, p. 287.

<sup>3</sup> *Introduction to Bṛihat Saṁhitā*, p. 82.

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.* p. 40.

product of a country known as Gauḍa."<sup>1</sup> The ancient commentary of Bhāṭṭasvāmin here explains that Kauṭilya speaks of the silver of Gauḍa. Gauḍikam or Gaulikam was the silver from which must have been Bengal Kāmarūpa (Kāmarūpajam).<sup>2</sup> Here his geography is a little faulty like that of Yaśodhara who calls the Gauḍas, as we have seen before, a Prācya people living in Kāmarūpa. Evidently to commentators living in the far south or west, the distance between Bengal and Kāmarūpa which are contiguous countries, was immaterial, especially as the boundaries varied quite often with the advent of every ambitious monarch. The commentators prove at least the fact that according to Indian tradition, Gauḍa was in the East and not in the region near Thaneswar or Gonda. We may also observe that Kauṭilya's name for Kāmarūpa is *Pāra-Lauhitya*,<sup>3</sup> or 'the Trans-Lauhitya country'—the country on the other side of the Brahmaputra. Evidently therefore Kauṭilya's Gauḍa was not Kāmarūpa, but must have been the same as the Gauḍa of Parāśara who was not much removed from him in date.

It must now be amply clear that the country that was known as Gauḍa in ancient times, was a part of Bengal and it seems more than probable that it is in

Bengal also that we have to locate the Gauḍapura of Pāṇini must have been the City of Gauḍa in Bengal. Gauḍapura of Pāṇini<sup>4</sup> who says that when the words *Ariṣṭa* and *Gauḍa* stand before the word *pura* so as to form the words *Ariṣṭapura*, and *Gauḍipura*, the acute accent is placed

1 तुर्थोद्भृत गौडिक काममल करुङ्क चाकशालिकं च रूपेषु ।

*Arthashastra*, p. 83. Translation, Shambu Sastrī, p. 104.

2 गौलिक कामरूपजं तगरपुण्याभम् ।

*Bhāṭṭasvāmin on Arthashastra*, See J. BOBB, Vol XI, Pt. II, p. 62.

3 *Arthashastra*, p. 78.

4 तुरे प्राचाम् । अरिष्टगौडपूर्वे च । Pāṇini, VI, 69-100.

on the final syllable of the first member. The only *pura* or city bearing the name of Gauḍa at any time was situated in Bengal. No city of the same name occurs in the Gonda district or anywhere else in India.

The only passage that shows the existence of a Gauḍa country in the Gonda district is found in a verse that

A Gauḍadeśa  
is a district in  
Bengal, and  
is mentioned only  
in some Purāṇas

occurs in the list of kings of the Ikṣvāku family in the *Matsyapurāṇa*, *Kürma* and *Liṅga* Purāṇas, as pointed out by Cunningham<sup>1</sup>,

where Śrāvasti is said to have been founded by Śrāvasta of that dynasty in the Gauḍa-deśa. The corresponding passage in the other Purāṇas, for example, *Vāyu*, *Viṣṇu*, *Bhāgavata* etc., speaks of the foundation of Śrāvasti by king Śrāvasta but does not mention the Gauḍa-deśa. This *Gauda* therefore must have been merely a Sanscritization by some writers of the local name *Gonda* and hence it is no wonder that it was very rarely used in literature. It is nowhere found in any record of historical importance whether literary or epigraphical, it is only an unimportant local name Sanscritized in imitation of the Gauḍa *par excellence* in Bengal. It is remarkable that in Buddhist literature where Śrāvasti and the country around is frequently referred to, *Gauda* is nowhere mentioned. The Gauḍa of Kauṭilya and early geographical works and of inscriptions was no doubt, in Bengal; it acquired a great political importance since the later Gupta times, and even before that, formed a well-known province of Eastern India. There is every reason to believe that the Gauḍa *pura* of Pāṇini was the capital of this Gauḍa country.

It occurs nowhere  
else in Literature  
or Inscription

श्रावस्तरच महातेजा वस्तकस्तत्त्वतोऽभवत् ।

तिर्मिता येन श्रावरती गौडदेशे द्विजोत्तमाः ॥

*Matsyapurāṇa*, 12.30. *Vaṅgavast* edition. This passage has been quoted by Mr. B.C. Mazumdar, *J.R.A.S.* 1905, p. 412.

<sup>2</sup> *Arch. Surv. Rep.* 1, p. 827.

Rs. 13.5-00

In culture the Gaudas had won a distinct position for themselves in early times and created an independent style of poetic composition—the *Gaudī-rīti*, and it is positively certain that Gauda here refers to Bengal and not the Gonda district. <sup>Gaudī-Rīti of Rhetoricians is the Style of Bengal</sup>

We have already seen Bāṇabhaṭṭa speak of Śasāṅka, the king of Bengal (Karnasuvarna of Yuan Chwang) as *Gaudādhīpa*. When the same author in one of the introductory verses<sup>1</sup> to his *Harṣacarita* speaks of the fondness for a display of sonorous words (*akṣara-dambara*) as the characteristic of the people of Gauda, he cannot mean by the word any other country than Bengal. Dāṇḍin, the author of the *Kāvyaḍarśa*, who also is generally supposed to have flourished about the same time as Bāṇa, i.e., the seventh century after Christ, expatiates at some length on the differences of the two styles of Vidarbha and Gauda and besides, speaks of them as the Southern (*Dakṣinātya*) and the Eastern (*Paurastya*) styles.<sup>2</sup> This characterisation of the *Gaudī* as the *Paurastya* or the Eastern style shows that the Gauda of Dāṇḍin must have been in Eastern India and without doubt, Bengal, in as much as we find his contemporary, Bāṇa, placing Gauda in Bengal.

A comparison with the *Nātyaśāstra* of Bharata and the *Kāvyamīmāṃsā* of Rājaśekhara leaves, moreover, no room for doubt that *Gaudī-rīti* was the style

१ श्लेष्यायमुदीर्घेऽप्रतीच्येष्वर्थमाश्रकम् ।  
उत्पेक्षा दाक्षिणात्येऽपु गौवेष्वद्वरदम्बरः ॥

*Harṣacarita* Introductory verse, No. 7.

2 Winteritz *Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur*, III. p. 11 ff.

३ अतो नैवमनुपासं दाक्षिणात्याः प्रमुच्यते ।  
इत्यनासोऽव वैक्यमर्थालक्षारदम्बरौ ॥ १. ६०  
अपेक्षमात्या वृद्धे पौरस्त्या काष्वपद्मिः ॥ १. ५०.

*Kāvyaḍarśa* edited by Jivananda Vidyasagara.

of Bengal. Thus the *Nātyasāstra* which is much earlier than *Kārvākādarśa*, mentions four styles (*pravṛttis*)—Āvanti, Pañcāla-madhyamā, Dāksinātyā and Odra-Māgadhi,<sup>1</sup> of which the last two correspond to the Vaidarbhi and Gaudī styles of Dāṇḍin<sup>2</sup> and it is apparent that what Bharata calls Odra-Māgadhi or the style of Orissa-Magadha is called Gaudī or Paurastyā by Dāṇḍin, and Bharata expressly tells us that his Odra-Māgadhi flourished in Bengal, Orissa, Magadha, Prāgjyotiṣa, Tāmralipta and the adjoining countries<sup>3</sup>. That this Odra-Māgadhi is identical with Gaudī is made clear by Rājeśekhara who shows the connection between the earlier and the later ways of enumeration; he says that in the countries Aṅga, Vaṅga, Suhma, Bṛahma, Pundra, etc. the *Odra-Māgadhi Pravṛtti* and the *Gaudī Riti* were prevalent and he cites in this connection a verse describing the Gaudī ladies (*Gudulāṅganāśu*).<sup>4</sup> There can, therefore be no doubt that the Gaudīriti of the rhetoricians refers to Bengal.

1 आवन्ती दाक्षिणात्या च तथा चैवोद्भागधीः ।  
पाञ्चालमध्यमा चेति विह्वेयास्तु प्रवृत्तयः ॥

*Bhāratīya-Nātya-Śāstram*, VI. 26, Edited by Grosset.

2 वैदर्म्मौडीयौ वर्येते प्रस्फुटान्तरौ

*Kārvākādarśa*, 1. 40.

3 अङ्गा वज्रा: कलिङ्गाश्च वत्साश्चैवोद्भागधाः ।  
पौश्रा नैपालिकाश्चैव अन्तर्गिरिवहिर्गिरः ॥  
तथा प्रवङ्गमा ज्ञेया मलदा महुवर्जकाः ।  
ब्रह्मोत्तरप्रभृतयो भारता मार्गवास्तया ॥  
प्राग्न्योतिषयः पुलिन्दाश्च वै देहास्त्रालिपकाः ।  
प्राच्यप्रभृतयच्चैव युञ्जन्ति होद्भागधीम् ॥

No<sup>o</sup>, Grosset, XIV. 45-47.

4 आथ सर्वे प्रथमं प्राचीं विशं शिश्रियुर्यत्राङ्गचञ्चलाश्चापुण्ड्राद्या जनपदाः तत्राभिः-  
युञ्जन्ति तमौभेद्यां वेच्च यथेष्टमसेविष्ट । स तत्रत्याभिः खीभिरन्वक्षियत । सा प्रवृत्तिरोड-  
भागधी । तदाविधाकल्पयापि तथा यद्वयान्वदीकूलः समासवदुप्रासवद्योगदृच्चपरम्परानाम-  
ज्ञात् सा सातांडीया रीतिः । *Kārvākāmānsa*, Gaekwad's Oriental Series No. 1; edited  
by C. D. Dusal and R. Anantakrishna Shastri, p. 8; for *Odramāgadhi* the text wrongly  
gives *gaudramāgadhi*, but the learned editors give the correct reading in their note  
(p. 8 of notes).

The country of Paundra is not mentioned by Vātsyāyana, but is once referred to by the Commentary to illustrate the sport of *Kadamba-yuddha* in which, it is said that instead of the soft balls of Kadamba-flower, the Paundras used sticks and stones. Mithila is similarly mentioned by the commentator in connection with a local sport<sup>1</sup>.

The only other place that Vātsyāyana mentions in Eastern India is Pātaliputra at the request of the courtesans of which city, Dattaka composed his monograph on the section of the Kāmaśāstra dealing with them<sup>2</sup>. Beside this, Yaśodhara, the Commentator, considers Pātaliputra to be implied by the term *Nagara* in two passages of Vātsyāyana, it being perhaps, in his opinion, the 'nagara' *par excellence*: thus he explains the word *Nāgarikyah* in a passage by *Pātaliputrikyah*<sup>3</sup>, and *Nāgarakāḥ* in another, by *Pātaliputraprakāḥ*<sup>4</sup>. Yaśodhara has not stated on what authority, or from what considerations, he was led to offer this explanation, but bearing in mind his poor knowledge of the geography of Eastern India, as we have seen before, this identification is not worthy of any serious consideration. We can, therefore, have no hesitation in rejecting his identification as a mere haphazard guess. Besides, the very fact that Vātsyāyana mentions Pātaliputra expressly when speaking of Dattaka, precludes the supposition that

1 कदम्बयुद्धानि...यथा—पौराणानाम् युद्धं कवचित्तुक्षिहृश्यते । *Kāmasūtra*, p. 55.

2 पाल्चालानुषाणम् । भिक्षालापचंद्रितैः पाल्चालाकोडा, यथा भिक्षालाम् । *Ibid.*, p. 54.

3 तस्य चर्ष्टं वैशिकमधिकरणं पाटलिपुत्रिकार्णं गणिकार्णं निवोगाहस्तः पृथक्क्रचकार । *Ibid.*, p. 6.

4 नागरिक्य इति । पाटलिपुत्रिक्यः । *Ibid.*, p. 127.

5 नागरकाः पाटलिपुत्रकाः । *Ibid.*, 166.

he should use another word when speaking of the same place in a different part of the same book. We shall presently discuss the question of the location of Vātsyāyana's *Nagara*.

Another country which was apparently in the Prācyā division is Gonarda, implied in the name Gonardīya of Gonarda in Eastern India one of the predecessors of Vātsyāyana<sup>1</sup>. It is doubtful, as we have already pointed out<sup>2</sup>, whether this Gonardīya is the same as the grammarian Gonardīya and Kielhorn is most probably right in holding that the latter cannot be the same person as Patañjali, the author of the *Mahābhāṣya*<sup>3</sup>. The country of Gonarda is located by some Indian scholars in Kashmir, and by others in Oudh<sup>4</sup>. The first view has its origin probably in a fancied connection with the Kashmir kings called *Gonanda*<sup>5</sup>, or rather *Gonarda*, as they are more correctly styled by Kalhana<sup>6</sup>. There is no reason to think that Gonarda was the Punjab as Mr. N. L. Dey does, because it was conquered by Gonarda of Kashmir<sup>7</sup>. All that we can say with certainty about the location of Gonarda is that it is a country in the Eastern Division of India. The Kāśikā-vṛtti gives the example *Gonardīya* in illustration of the rule of Pāṇini according to which the suffix 'cha' is added to names of Prācyā countries whose first vowel is 'e' or 'o'<sup>8</sup>. Again, the *Matsya-Purāṇa*

1 See *ante*, p. 8ff.

2 *Ibid.*, pp. 11-12.

3 *Indian Antiquary*, vol. xv, pp. 87ff. and Vol. xvi, pp. 101ff.

4 अयं च गोनर्देशः करसरेषु इति प्राज्ञः अयोध्याप्रान्ते इति पौरस्त्याः।

MM. Pandit Sivadatta D. Kudala in his edition of the *Mahābhāṣya*, Int. p. 16 f n. 3

5 Cunningham, *Rep. Arch. Survey*, Vol. II, p. 10.

6 Stein, *Rājatarṇī*, Int. p. 59.

7 *Dictionary of Ancient Indian Geography* Gonardīya

8 पूर्व प्राचीं देशे । Pāṇini, I. 1, 75.

एव वस्याचामादिस्तुप्रायदेशाभिधाने बृहस्पते भवति । गोनर्दीयः।

Kāśikā-vṛtti on the above,

mentions Gonarda as a country in the Prāya or Eastern division along with Prāgjyotiṣa, Pundra, Videha, Tāmralipta, Magadha etc<sup>1</sup>. The same statement is also found in the *Brahmāṇḍapurāṇa*<sup>2</sup>. Varāhamihira, however, places Gonarda in the south<sup>3</sup> but the location in Eastern India seems to be the correct one, as it is supported by the *Kāśikāvṛtti*, and its situation near Ayodhyā would tally with this view.

Southern India is designated by Vātsyāyana both as *Dakṣināpatha* as well as *Dakṣinātya*, and in some cases,

he speaks in general of the Dakṣinātyas  
Dakṣināpatha or Dakṣinātya or the people of the South, while in  
— the Southern Division other passages he mentions some of  
the individual provinces making up the southern region. With regard to the area comprised in the Southern Division, the Commentator explains that the country to the south of the river Narmadā or Nerbudda was called *Dakṣināpatha*<sup>4</sup>; this agrees well with the limit fixed by Rājasēkhara in his *Kāvyamīmāṃsā* where we are told that Dakṣināpatha lies to the south of the city of Māhiṣmatī<sup>5</sup>, that is, Māndhātā on the Nerbudda<sup>6</sup>; Bharata in his *Nityaśāstra* which belongs to about the same period as *Kāmasūtra*<sup>7</sup> also gives a definition of Dakṣināpatha which virtually agrees with the above; he says that Dakṣināpatha is the area containing the mountains Mahendra, Malayā, Sahya etc, and besides, that the *Dakṣinātya* or the southern style (*pranṛtti*) is found

१ प्राग्ज्योतिषाच्च पुराणाच्च विदेहाच्च अस्ति सकाः ।  
शास्त्र-मागध-गोदावरीः प्राच्या जनपदाः स्मृताः ॥

*Mateya-Purāṇa*, ch 114. V. 45.

<sup>2</sup> *Brahmāṇḍa-purāṇa*, Bha. 16.

<sup>3</sup> *Bṛhat-Saṃhitā*, ch. XIV. 12.

<sup>4</sup> नर्मदाया दक्षिणेन देशो दक्षिणापयः । *Ibid.* p. 126.

<sup>5</sup> माहिष्मत्याः परतो दक्षिणापयः । *Kāvyamīmāṃsā*, p. 98.

<sup>6</sup> Fleet, *J.R.A.S.*, 1910, p. 444.

<sup>7</sup> Winternitz, *Geschichte der Indischen Litteratur*, III p. 8. f.n. 3.

in vogue in all the countries between the Vindhyas and the Southern Sea'.

Dāksināpātha is mentioned by Vātsyāyana in connection with the custom of marriage with the daughter of the maternal uncle in that region<sup>2</sup> and the Dāksinātyas are referred to four times. One peculiar custom of the South is referred to by him as consisting of something like circumcision<sup>3</sup>. Vātsyāyana refers to the peculiar way in which the Dāksinātyas dress their finger-nails as distinguished from the Gaudas, while the Mahārāshtrikas, he assures us, follow a middle course<sup>4</sup>. The Dāksinātyas, says Vātsyāyana, are also characterised by a fondness for delivering artistic strokes at ladies in their amorous sports as an expression of strong passion<sup>5</sup>. This was a local custom with them and Vātsyāyana gives several examples from the court life of the South. The women of the South, says he, bear on their bodies marks of these strokes<sup>6</sup> which sometimes were so

१ महेन्द्रो मलयः सङ्घो भेक्षः पलपिक्ष्वरः ।  
 एतेषु ये श्रिता देशाः स ज्ञेयो दक्षिणायाप्यः ।  
 कोशलास्तोशलाश्चैव कलिङ्गा यवनोऽशासाः ।  
 द्रविडान्न्द्रा महाराष्ट्रा वैष्णवा वै वानवासजाः ॥  
 दक्षिणाय्य समुद्रस्य तथा विन्ध्याय्य चास्तरे ।  
 ये देशास्तेषु युज्जीत दाक्षिणायात्यां तु नित्यशः ॥

*Bhāratiya Naīyāśṭra*, Edited by Grosset XIV. 89—81.

२ मातुलकुलानुवर्ती दक्षिणायाप्ये । *Kāmasūtra*, p. 200.

३ दाक्षिणायानां सिङ्गस्य कर्णयोरिव व्यधनं बालस्य । *Ibid.* p. 874.

४ हस्तानि कर्मसहिष्यानि विकल्पयोजनादु च स्वेच्छावपातीनि दाक्षिणायानाम् ।  
*Ibid.* p. 115. मध्यमान्युभयभाज्जिमहाराष्ट्राकाणामिति ।

५ कीलासुरसि कर्तीं शिरणि विद्वां कपोलयोः संदृश्यकां स्तनयोः पार्श्वयोश्चेति  
 पृष्ठेः सह प्रह्यनमटविधमिति दाक्षिणायान्यानाम् । *Ibid.* pp. 147—8.

६ तथु वरीनामुरसि कीलानि च तत्कृतानि हस्तयन्ते, देशसारस्यमेतत् । *Ibid.* p. 148.

violent as to deprive them of their lives. It was by just such a stroke—the Kārtarī imparted on the head—that Kuutala Sātakarṇi Sātavāhana killed his chief queen, Malayavatī,<sup>1</sup> the Chola king killed the courtesan, Citrasenā, by a similar stroke on the chest, called Kīlā in the technical language of the *Kāmasutra*<sup>2</sup>, and a stroke, the Viddhā, aimed at the forehead of a dancing girl by Naradeva, who, as the Commentary informs us, was Chief of the Pāṇḍya king's forces, made her lose an eye.<sup>3</sup> Besides, he refers to an evil practice of the Dāksinātyas<sup>4</sup>.

Besides the general mention of the people of the Deccan, Vātsyāyana delineates some peculiarities in the Dravidian and character of the women of Dravida (*Dravida Vanavāsi dyah*)<sup>5</sup> and Vanavāsi (*Vdnavaśikyah*)<sup>6</sup>. Yaśodhara, whose ignorance of the geography of the East, as we have seen, was quite lamentable, shows an accurate knowledge of the location of the countries of the South. Thus he says, the *Dravida Viṣaya* was to the south of the Karṇāṭa country<sup>7</sup> (Kanara of modern days) and the *Vanavāsa-viṣaya*, he says, was to the east of the province of Koṅkaṇa<sup>8</sup>. In connection with this mention of *Vanavāsi* by Vātsyāyana, Mahāmaho-pādhyāya Hara prasad Sastri in his lectures on *Magadhan Literature* has expressed the opinion that the ancient name, Vaijayantī, "became *Vanavāsi* about the begin-

1 कर्तव्यो कुन्तसः शातकर्णिः शातवाहनो महादेवो मस्यवतीम् जघान् | Ibid., p. 149.

2 रतियोगे हि कीलया गणिकां चित्रसेनां चोलराजो जघान् | Ibid., p. 149.

3 नरदेवः कुपाणितिर्द्युमा दुष्प्रयुक्तया नर्ती काणां चकार | The Commentary explains, नरदेवः पाराख्यराजस्य सेनापतिः | Ibid., p. 149.

4 शब्दोरतं पायावपि दान्तिशात्यानाम् | Ibid., p. 141.

5 मृद्यमानाश्वाभियोगान्मन्दं मन्दं प्रसिद्धन्ते द्राविडाः | Ibid., p. 127.

6 मःयमवेगाः सर्वसहाः स्वाङ्गप्रच्छादिन्यः पराङ्महासिन्यः कुस्तिशताश्वीष्मपत्तम् परिहारियो वानवासिन्यः | Ibid., p. 127.

7 कर्णाटविषया इन्नियोगे द्रविडविषयः | Ibid., p. 127.

8 कोङ्कणविषयात् पूर्वेण वनवासविषयः | Ibid., p. 127.

ning of the Christian era<sup>1</sup>”, and thence he derives an argument in favour of his theory that Vātsyāyana is to be placed in the first century A. C. But we find from inscriptions that the name Vaijayantī continued for several centuries of the Christian era. Thus we find Viṣṇukadā-Cuṭukulānanda Sātakāṇṇi calls himself V a i j a y a n t i—p u r a -r ā j ā in an inscription on a pillar in front of the Kalleśvara temple at Malavalli in the Shikarpur Taluka of Mysore.<sup>2</sup> As Fleet observes, “This king of Vaijayantī, that is Banawāsi in the North Kanara district, Bombay, may be referred to any time in or about the first or second century A. D.”<sup>3</sup> In a later inscription on the same pillar the Kadamba king, Śivakhada-Vamma or Śivaskandavarman calls himself the ‘lord of Vaijayantī’ and Rice has “marked its date as about 250 A. D.”<sup>4</sup>

Vātsyāyana also mentions V i d a r b h a or Berar twice in his work in connection with the abuses in the king’s harem<sup>5</sup>, and the Commentary explains that the country to the south of Kālāñjara was called Vidarbha<sup>6</sup>. Another people, the V a t s a g u l m a s are also mentioned in the same connection as the Vaidarbhas and are to some extent characterised by similar abuses ; among both these peoples, we are informed by Vātsyāyana, beautiful women were sent to the king’s harem<sup>7</sup>. This agreement is not to be wondered at, in as much

1 *Magadhan Literature*, p. 87.

2 *Epigraphia Carnatica*, Vol. vii, p. 251.

3 *JITAS*, 1905, pp. 304-5.

4 *Ep. Car.* vii. Introduction, p. 6.

5 रूपवतोर्जनपद्मयोषितः प्रीत्यपदेशेन भास्त्रं भासाधं वा वासवन्त्यान्तःपुरिका वैदर्भाण्याम् । \*\* एवं रेव पुत्रैरन्तःपुराणि कामवारैर्जननीवर्जन्पुष्पयुज्यन्ते वैदर्भकाणाम् । *Ks.* pp. 287 and 294.

6 कालान्जराहिन्द्रिणेन विदर्भो नाम देशः । *Ibid.*, p. 288.

7 महामात्रे श्वराणामन्तःपुराणि निशि सेवार्थं राजा भूषणा चक्रन्ति वास्त्वगुरुम् कानाम् । \*\* प्रेष्याभिः सह तद्वेषाणागरकपुत्रान् प्रवेशयन्ति वास्त्वगुरुम् कानाम् ।

*Ibid.*, p. 287 and p. 294. Cf. Note 5.

as we learn, from Rājaśekhara's *Kāryamīmāṃsā* that Vatsagulma was a city in the Vidaarbhas and that it was a favourite haunt of the god of love<sup>1</sup>. The Commentator, Yaśodhara, says that in the Dakṣināpatha there were two brothers called Vatsa and Gulma, and the country where they lived was designated Vatsagulma<sup>2</sup>. Evidently he had no personal knowledge of the place and his information was gathered from some such work as Kṣemendra's *Bṛhatkathāmañjari* where we are told that Somaśarmā, a Dakṣinātya Brahmin had two sons named Vatsa and Gulma<sup>3</sup> whose nephew (sister's son) was Guṇḍhya, the author of the *Bṛhatkathā*, the great storehouse of stories in Paisācī Prakrit. The same story is told also in the *Kathāśarīrāgara*<sup>4</sup>, and the two brothers Vatsa and Gulma are also mentioned there; but in neither of these stories is there any record of the foundation of the city, which, as we learn from Rājaśekhara, was situated in Berar. By the time that Yaśodhara wrote his Commentary, the name Vatsagulma must have gone out of use.

The people of the Andhra country, which the Commentator tells us, was in the Dakṣināpatha, to the east of the Karnāṭa-Viṣaya<sup>5</sup>, is referred to several times. The Andhra ladies are referred to in two passages<sup>6</sup> and Vātsyāyana speaks

१ तत्रास्ति मनोजन्मनो देवस्य क्रीडावासो विदर्भे च वस्त्रगुलम् नाम नगरम् ।

*Kāryamīmāṃsā*, p. 10.

२ दक्षिणापये सोदर्यौ राजपुत्रौ वस्त्रगुलमौ ताम्यामध्यासितो देशो वस्त्रगुलम्  
इति प्रतीतः । *Kāmaśūtra*, p. 288.

३ अभूतां दक्षिणापयस्य द्विजातेः सोमवार्षमनः ।  
वस्त्रगुलमाभिधौ तु त्रौ श्रुतार्थं कन्त्यका तथा ॥

*Bṛhatkathāmañjari* Kāryamīmāṃsā edition, I, 3, 4.

४ *Kathāśarīrāgara*, Lambaka 1, Tirapya 6, Nirṇayaṅgāra edn., p. 15ff.

५ कर्णाटविषयात् पूर्वेषान्तर्विषयः । *Kāmaśūtra*, p. 126.

६ प्रकृत्या मृद्गरो रत्तप्रिया अगुचितवयो निराचाराशान्त्रः । तदान्त्रीयु प्रायेवेति  
संवेशनप्रकारा वाभवीयाः । *Ibid.* p. 126 and p. 135.

of a custom by which a newly married damsel among the Andhras was sent to the king's harem on the tenth day with some presents<sup>1</sup>.

The Mahārāṣṭrakas whose country is located by Yaśodhara between the Narmadā and the Karnāṭa district<sup>2</sup>, are mentioned in two passages, one of which refers to the method of dressing the finger-nails of the men<sup>3</sup> and the other gives some characteristics of the ladies<sup>4</sup> who are said to have been fond of all the sixty-four Pāñcāla arts.

Another indirect mention of a southern country is that implied in the name of Dāṇḍakya, the Bhoja king who met with extermination along Dāṇḍaka with his whole family and kingdom for ravishing a Brahmin girl<sup>5</sup>. This is one of those passages which have apparently been quoted by Vātsyāyana from the Arthashastra of Kautilya.<sup>6</sup> The story is related in the Uttarakānda of Rāmāyaṇa<sup>7</sup> how the flourishing dominions of Dāṇḍakya were changed into the forest of Dāṇḍaka. The Bhoja kings ruled in the south not only at the time of Kautilya but also much earlier; they go back without any doubt to the age of the Brāhmaṇas, and most probably, even so far back as the Rgvedic period. Thus we are told by a passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa that in the south, the kings of the Satvats were called Bhojas and

1 प्रता जनयदकन्या दण्डेऽहनि किञ्चिदौपायनिकसुपृष्ठा प्रविशन्त्वन्तः उत्तुपसुका एव विसुज्यन्त इत्याल्पानाम् । Ibid., p. 287.

2 नर्मदाक्षेत्रविषयवोमध्ये महाराष्ट्रविषयः । Ibid., p. 127.

3 मध्यमान्युभयभास्त्रिज महाराष्ट्रकानामिति । Ibid., p. 115.

4 सकृष्टसुविष्टप्रयोगरागिन्योऽस्तीलपरुषवाक्यं प्रियाः शयने च सरभसोपकमा महाराष्ट्रिक्षयः । Ibid., pp. 126-127.

5 यथा दाण्डक्यो नाम भोजः कामाद्र ब्राह्मणकन्यामभिसन्ध्यमानः सर्वज्ञुराहु ते विनाश । Ibid., p. 24.

6 Eng. trans. of Kautilya's Arthashastra by S. Shamasastri, Introduction, p. xi.

7 Bombay edition, Chapters 22-24.

8 Ait. Br. viii. 14.

a passage in the *Rgveda*<sup>1</sup> mentions Pākasthāman, the Bhoja; besides, other passages in the *Rgveda* and the comments in the *Bṛhaddevatā* on them, show clearly that Bhoja as the designation of a line of kings was well known in the *Rgvedic* era<sup>2</sup>.

A western division with general characteristics is not mentioned by Vātsyāyana and it appears that there

The Western Division was no uniformity of character and habits in Western India as in the *Prācyā* country and the *Dākṣinātya*. We have already

referred to the land of the five rivers with the Indus as the sixth, i.e., the Punjab in the north-west in connection with the *Udīya* division and only the countries in the South-West now remain to be dealt with. Vātsyāyana

Mālava and Avantī mentions the ladies of Mālava and Avantī, the former being properly the

Eastern or *Pūrvā-Mālava* with its capital at Vidiṣā, and the latter, Western or *Aparā-Mālava* with its capital at Ujjayinī as the Commentary correctly points out<sup>3</sup>. Avantī and Mālava are also separately mentioned in Bharata's *Nātyaśāstra* where we are told that the people of Avantī, Soraṣṭra, Mālava etc. have the same style as Avantī<sup>4</sup>. Another name for eastern Malava was Ākara as we find from *Bṛhat-Saṃhitā* which mentions Ākara among the countries in the South West<sup>5</sup> as also from several inscriptions of the Śātavāhanas where we find Ākara and Avantī

1 *R.V.* viii. 3, 24.

2 The matter has been exhaustively dealt with by me in *Aryan Occupation of Eastern India*, p. 46 and pp. 59-62.

3 *Kāmasātra*, p. 125.

4 आवन्तिका उज्ज्वलिनीदेशभवाः । ता एवापरमालभ्यः । *Ibid.* p. 125

5 आवन्तिका वैदिकिका; सौराष्ट्रा मालवास्तथा । *Nātyaśāstra* xiii. 29 (Kāvyamala edn.). Grosset reads—आवत का etc. (xiv. 4).

6 फल्गुगिरिप्रियदनमाकरकणप्रवेयपाणवशुद्धाः । बर्दकिरातस्तुक्ष्यारथाभीरच्छकाः ॥  
*Bṛhat-Saṃhitā* XIV. 18.

mentioned side by side<sup>1</sup>. These inscriptions and also coins go to show that the two Mālavas were by the first century A.D. included in the empire of the Śātavāhanas<sup>2</sup>, but with the disruption of that empire, they must have again become independent, as their separate treatment by Vātsyāyana shows.

The Ābhīras are mentioned prominently. The Ābhīra ladies are said to be the same in their likes and dislikes with the ladies of Mālava<sup>3</sup>, and the love intrigues of the ladies in the harems of Ābhīra kings are also referred to. In this connection we are told that the Ābhīra harem was defended by guards who bore the designation of *Kṣatriyas*<sup>4</sup>, showing that the Ābhīras themselves had not yet acquired the status of Kṣatriyas and it seems that these latter were employed as guardians of the royal seraglio, in consideration of the lesser chance of their communication with the ladies than of warders taken from their own clan. An Ābhīra Kottarāja or king of Kottā, which, the Commentator informs us, was a place in Gurjarāta (modern Gujrat) is mentioned as an illustration of the dangers to kings in entering the houses of others on love intrigues. The Commentary gives the detail that this Ābhīra king had entered the house of Śreṣṭhī Vasumitra to meet his wife, and there he was assassinated by a washerman employed by the king's brother who had a claim to the throne<sup>5</sup>.

1 *Ep. Ind.* VIII, p. 44 and p. 60.

2 *Camb. Hist.* I, p. 583.

3 परिष्वज्जनुमननसन्तत्त्वशाप्रधानाः कृतवर्जिताः प्रहशनसाध्या मालव्या आभीर्यश्च । *Kamasutra*, p. 125.

4 इतियस्तत्कैरन्तःपुररक्षिभिरेवाथ साधयन्त्याभीरकानाम् । *Ibid.* p. 294.

5 गूर्जराते कोटि नाम स्थानं, तस्य राजानमाभीरानामानं, परभवनगतमिति श्वेष्विद्विष्वभास्य भार्यामधिगन्तु तत्त्ववत्ततं, रजको राज्याहेण्या तद्वभाग्रा प्रयुक्तो जघान ।

Saurāṣṭrakas, or the people of Surāṣṭra, that is, the peninsula of Kathiawar, are mentioned in connection with the practice of the city as well as the country women among them, of living in the royal harem either individually or in a body for sporting with the king<sup>1</sup>. Lāṭa or Northern Kathiawar is referred to twice,—some characteristics of the ladies of Lāṭa being given in one passage<sup>2</sup> and those of the men in another<sup>3</sup>.

The people of Aparānta are referred to several times; in one passage the Aparānta ladies are said to resemble those of Lāṭa<sup>4</sup>, and another refers to an immoral custom prevalent among the Aparānta people that they sent their own handsome wives to kings and high officers in order to win their favour<sup>5</sup>. A third passage states that in Aparānta, the king's harem was not so strictly guarded as in other parts of India<sup>6</sup>. As regards the location of the province, the Commentary says that the Aparānta country was situated near the Western Sea. It is now generally considered to be "Northern Konkan with a capital at Sūrpāraka (now Sopārā)"<sup>7</sup> but very often the name appears to have been applied to designate a much wider region from Malabar to Sindh. Kālidāsa, for

1 राजकीडार्थं नगरश्चियो जनपदश्चियम् संवर्ण पृष्ठश्च राजकुलं प्रविशन्ति सौराष्ट्र-काश्यामिति । Ibid., p. 287-8.

2 चण्डवेगा मन्दसीत्कृत्ता आपरान्तिका लाक्ष्यश्च । Ibid., p. 126.

3 ऊर्द्धविवाहुनाभिमूलेषु लाटानाम् । Ibid., p. 103.

4 See note 2.

5 दशनीयाः स्वभार्याः प्रीतिवायमेव महामात्रराजम्भ्यो दृद्यपरान्तिकानाम् । Ibid., p. 287.

6 नीतिसुरक्षितत्वादापरान्तिकानाम् । Ibid., p. 294.

7 पश्चिमसम्ब्रसमीपेऽपरान्तदेशः । Ibid., p. 126.

example, appears to have used the word in its literal sense of 'the land on the western boundary line' or the "western marches" including the entire-coast line from Malabar to Sindh. He makes Raghu cross the Sahya range or the Western Ghats between the two peaks Malaya and Dardura<sup>1</sup> which are no doubt Dodabetta in the Nilgiri District and the Anaimalai hills of which the highest is the Anaimudi peak ; here is in fact the well-known Palghat gap which forms the only wide opening through the Western Ghats in these regions and through which the Railway line crosses the Ghats. Next, we are told that Raghu's immense army, bent upon conquering the Aparānta country, filled up, as it were, the narrow strip of land between the Ghats and the Sea, and the very next verse takes us to Kerala characterised by its noble palms<sup>2</sup> and extending, in its widest signification, as far north as Kangarote river near Goa in North Kanara<sup>3</sup>. Immediately after this, the poet speaks of the date palms<sup>4</sup> which flourish most in the north, especially in the dry, arid regions of Sindh and in the verse following, he again speaks of the sea paying tribute to Raghu through the kings of Aparānta<sup>5</sup>. Apparently therefore the whole western coast from Kerala up to

१ स निर्विशय यथाकामं तेष्टासीनवन्दनौ । स्तनाविव विशस्तस्याः शैलौ भूत्य-  
द्वृतौ । *Raghurāmāṇi*, IV, 51.

२

भयोत्सूष्टविभूतानां तेन केरलवेषिताभ् ।

असकेषु चक्षुरेषु श्वर्गप्रतिनिधिकृतः ॥

मुखामास्तोद्धतमगमत्कैतकं रजः ।

तदोधवारवायानमयतपत्वासताम् ॥

अन्यभूयत वाहानां चरतां गात्रशिष्जितैः ।

वम्भिः पवनोद्धूतराजतालीचनधवनिः ॥ *Ibid.* IV, 54-55.

३ See *J.R.I.S.* 1897, p. 867.

४

सर्जुरीस्तकलवदानां भद्रोदगारस्तरनिषु ।

केषु करिनो पेतुः पुनागेभ्यः शिलो मुखाः ॥

अहानं किंश्चन्द्रान् रामावरमयितो ददौ ।

अपरान्तमहीपालन्याजेन रथ्वे करम् ॥ *Ibid.* IV, 67.

५

६

७

८

९

१०

११

१२

१३

१४

१५

१६

१७

१८

१९

२०

२१

२२

२३

२४

२५

२६

२७

२८

२९

३०

३१

३२

३३

३४

३५

३६

३७

३८

३९

४०

४१

४२

४३

४४

४५

४६

४७

४८

४९

५०

५१

५२

५३

५४

५५

५६

५७

५८

५९

६०

६१

६२

६३

६४

६५

६६

६७

६८

६९

७०

७१

७२

७३

७४

७५

७६

७७

७८

७९

८०

८१

८२

८३

८४

८५

८६

८७

८८

८९

९०

९१

९२

९३

९४

९५

९६

९७

९८

९९

१००

१०१

१०२

१०३

१०४

१०५

१०६

१०७

१०८

१०९

११०

१११

११२

११३

११४

११५

११६

११७

११८

११९

१२०

१२१

१२२

१२३

१२४

१२५

१२६

१२७

१२८

१२९

१३०

१३१

१३२

१३३

१३४

१३५

१३६

१३७

१३८

१३९

१४०

१४१

१४२

१४३

१४४

१४५

१४६

१४७

१४८

१४९

१५०

१५१

१५२

१५३

१५४

१५५

१५६

१५७

१५८

१५९

१६०

१६१

१६२

१६३

१६४

१६५

१६६

१६७

१६८

१६९

१७०

१७१

१७२

१७३

१७४

१७५

१७६

१७७

१७८

१७९

१८०

१८१

१८२

१८३

१८४

१८५

१८६

१८७

१८८

१८९

१९०

१९१

१९२

१९३

१९४

१९५

१९६

१९७

१९८

१९९

२००

२०१

२०२

२०३

२०४

२०५

२०६

२०७

२०८

२०९

२१०

२११

२१२

२१३

२१४

२१५

२१६

२१७

२१८

२१९

२२०

२२१

२२२

२२३

२२४

२२५

२२६

२२७

२२८

२२९

२३०

२३१

२३२

२३३

२३४

२३५

२३६

२३७

२३८

२३९

२४०

२४१

२४२

२४३

२४४

२४५

२४६

२४७

२४८

२४९

२५०

२५१

२५२

२५३

२५४

२५५

२५६

२५७

२५८

२५९

२६०

२६१

२६२

२६३

२६४

२६५

२६६

२६७

२६८

२६९

२७०

Sindh was included in Kālidāsa's Aparānta. Sir R. G. Bhandarkar was the first to identify Aparānta with the western coast : he says, "Aparānta must be the western coast below the Sahyādri ; for, Kālidāsa represents Raghu, in the fourth canto of the Raghuvarṣa to have crossed the Sahya to conquer that country, and to have by means of his immense army made the sea appear 'as if it touched the Sahya mountain.'"<sup>1</sup> Dr. Bhagavanlal Indraji following him, says, "It corresponds with modern Konkan, the district extending from Gokarna, in the Karwar collectorate to the Damān Gaṅgā, the frontier river of Gujrāt, or perhaps even further north to the Tāpi."<sup>2</sup> He quotes in support of his statement a passage from the Commentary to the Kamasutra and a passage in the Mahābhārata, where it is asserted that Arjuna visited all the holy places in Aparānta up to Prabhāsa in Kāthiawār. Dr. G. Bühler in a note also accorded his agreement with this view.<sup>3</sup> Pundit Indraji also observes<sup>4</sup> on the authority of the *Viśvakoṇa* quoted by Mallinātha that Śūrpāraka or Sopārā was the capital of Aparānta. Dr. Burgess also agrees with this view.<sup>5</sup>

On the evidence offered by the Aparānta coins; however, General Cunningham shows Aparānta to extend farther north and also to include territories considerably inland. Thus Cunningham observes, "Aparāntika is placed by Varāhamihira in the western division of India

1 *Trans. Second Int. Congress of Orient.* (1874), p. 313.

2 *Ibid. Ant.* vii, p. 259.

3 सोऽपरान्तेषु तीर्थानि त्रुत्यान्यायतानि च ।  
सर्वानेवानुपूर्व्येन ज्ञानाभित्विक्षमः ॥  
समुद्रे पश्चिमे वर्णि तीर्थान्यायतानि च ।  
तानि सर्वानि गत्वा स प्रभासस्मुपजिमवान् ॥

4 *Ind. Ant.* vii, p. 263.

5 *Ibid.*, p. 259.

6 *JBBRAS.* XV, p. 274. See *Ind. Ant.* 1901, p. 887.

along with Sindhu-Sauvīra and Pañcanada, or Sindh and the Punjab.”<sup>1</sup> He further argues, “The coins of the Aparāntikas, bearing the inscription *Aparatasa Mahārājasa*, were found chiefly in Rajputana about Nimach and Ajmer, by Colonel Stacy, while my own specimens have been obtained in north Rajputana and Mathurā. For these reasons I conclude that the country known as Aparāntika or “West Land,” was actually in the west of India, and that it did not extend geographically to the south of the Narbadā. Politically Sopārā and other places to the south of that river may have been included.” But this is not the view of Kālidāsa as we have shown above. Yet, at the same time, it has to be admitted that Cunningham’s argument has much force. Fleet also points out that “One of the Asoka edicts classes the Yavanas, Kāmbojas and Gandhāras as Aparānta,” and thinks that Aparānta includes “the Konkan, with also Northern Gujerat, Kathiawad, Cutch and Sindh.”<sup>2</sup> But as we have shown above, Kālidāsa takes it further south and includes the whole of the Malabar coast in it. It is difficult to say what region exactly is meant by Vātsyāyana but we can form a guess from the context in which it occurs. In the group of *sūtras* where Aparānta occurs, Vātsyāyana is illustrating a local custom (*Desapravṛti*), and all the people that he mentions belong to south-western India: thus they occur in the order—*Andhras* (whose dominions had before the days of Vātsyāyana extended to the western coast and Mālava), the *Vatsagulmas* and the *Vidarbhas*, (both of whom belong to Berar), the *Aparāntas* and lastly the *Saurāṣtrikas*. Aparānta of Vātsyāyana appears therefore to be the western coast including the Konkan and extending to the south

1 *Coins of Ancient India*, pp. 102–8.

2 *Ind. Ant.* xxii, p. 178 and *J.R.A.S.*, 1910, p. 427.

of Kathiawar. It did not include Saurāstra, nor Sindh in as much as the *Saindhavas* are mentioned separately.

These latter are only once mentioned in connection with the love affairs of the ladies in the king's harem.<sup>1</sup> The Commentary informs us that the Saindhava people dwelt in the land to the west of the Indus.<sup>2</sup>

The question now remains for us to determine the position of *Nagara* referred to in Vātsyāyana's *Nāgarikyah* and *Nāgarakāḥ*.

*Nagara-nā*  
City in present  
Jaipur State

The Commentary is certainly right in holding that they are proper names referring to a particular place and are not used in the literal sense of 'the women or men of a city' in general, and this will be evident from the context in which they occur. In neither of the cases is there any contrast between the town and the village. Both the words are used in connection with other proper names, the former in the order—*Andhryah*, *Māhārāṣṭriyah*, *Nāgarikyah*, *Drāvidyah*, *Vānavāsikyah* etc., and the latter in the order *Āhicchatrikāḥ*, *Sāketaḥ*, *Nāgarakāḥ*.<sup>3</sup> In the second case it is found that the names are those of well-known towns, *Ahicchatra*, the capital of the North *Pāñcāla* and *Sāketa* or *Ayodhyā*, and the conclusion becomes irresistible that *Nagara* is also the name of a particular town, and as we have seen that Vātsyāyana is more familiar with Western India than with the other parts of the country, we are led to expect *Nagara* in this region. We find here 'the great ancient city of *Nagara*'<sup>4</sup> the ruins of which now lie scattered over an area of nearly four square miles in extent in the territory of the *Mahārājā* of Jeypore, 25 miles to the south-south-east of

१ परिस्कन्दः कर्मकराशान्तः पुण्येष्वनिविद्वा अन्येऽपि तद् पात्र सैन्धवानाम् ।  
*Kāmasūtra*, p. 294.

२ सिन्धुनामा नदस्तस्य पश्चिमेन सिन्धुदेशस्तत्र भवानाम् । *Ibid.*, p. 295.

३ See *Ks.* pp. 126-7, and p. 166.

४ Cunningham's *Report of the Archaeological Survey of India*, vol. vi, pp. 161-162.

Tonk and 45 miles to the north-north-east of Bundi<sup>1</sup> Mr. Carley who made an archaeological survey of the place, picked up here several thousands of very ancient types of coins, many of the punch-marked variety and many bearing the legend *Jaya Milarina* in Brāhmī characters.<sup>2</sup> The city is not very far from Malwa and we think the democratic coin-legend speaking of the "Triumph of the Mālava people" refers to the celebrated Mālava-gana who are known to have instituted the era now called the Samvat<sup>3</sup>. There is another ancient city *Nagara* or *Tambabati Nagari* (about eleven miles north of Chitore) which has been identified with the *Madhyamikā* of *Patūñjali*<sup>4</sup>; this city might also claim identity with Vātsyayana's *Nagara*, but I think the former is the more probable one, as the latter was evidently called *Majhamikā* or *Madhyamikā*<sup>5</sup> about the beginning of the Christian era, and probably also a few centuries later. Pāṇini appears to have known *Nagara* as the name of a particular city as it appears in a City called *Nagara* in one of his Sūtras<sup>6</sup>. The *Kāśikā* commentary enumerates fifteen names as belonging to this class. That the word *Nagara* in this list is older than the *Kāśikā* and is a proper

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 162.

<sup>2</sup> These coins are described by Mr. Carley and also by Sir A. Cunningham, *Ibid.*, pp. 180-3, also Cunningham, vol. XIV, p. 150.

<sup>3</sup> Fleet, *Gupta Inscriptions*, pp. 87, 158; *J.R.A.S.*, 1913, pp. 905-8, and 1914, p. 747, Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar, *Ind. Ant.*, 1913, p. 161; Thomas, *J.R.A.S.*, 1914, pp. 1012-3, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Carley, *op. cit.*, pp. 200 ff.; Cunningham, Vol XIV p. 146. See also Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar, *The Archaeological Remains and Excavations at Nagari*, Mem. Arch. S. of India, No. 4.

<sup>5</sup> The coins found here bear the legend *Majhamikāya Sibijanapadasa*, Carley, *op. cit.*, p. 202.

<sup>6</sup> कर्त्ताविम्बो दक्षः। Pāṇini, iv. 2, 95. Prof. D. R. Bhandarkar who first drew attention to this *sūtra*, says in the *Indian Antiquary*, 1911, p. 34, footnote 45, "Nagara as the name of a town, was known to the author of *Kāśikā*." He considers *Nagarhot* or *Nagardā* as the *Nagara* from which the *Nagar Brāhmaṇas* derived their name,

name, appears from what the *Kāśikā* says in connection with another *sūtra* of Pāṇini (IV. 2, 128); it states that *Nagara* is read in the *Kattryādi* group as the designation of a particular city as it occurs in company with other such names there.<sup>1</sup> From a city called *Nagara* also the *Nāgari* alphabet might have derived its name. The existence of a city called *Nagara* therefore cannot be questioned. There is, however, no justification for holding that the *Nagara* we have referred to was the city where Vātsyāyana composed his work, it being only one of the many places that he has mentioned in illustrating his *sūtras*; the utmost that we can say is that from the uncompromising and straightforward manner in which he has exposed the evils practised by the king's officials and queens, he must have belonged to a *Gāya-rājya* or a democratic government like the city of the Mālavas described above. This is also apparent from the importance he attaches to the assembly of citizens (*nagarikasamavaya*) alluded to before.

It is hopeless to attempt to decide definitely which part of India Vātsyāyana belonged to. Some

*Vātsyāyana*  
did not belong to  
Magadha or  
Pāṭaliputra

scholars (including Mahāmahopādhyāya Haraprasād Sāstrī) hold that Vātsyāyana wrote his *Kāmasūtra* at the city of Pāṭaliputra, but there is hardly any justification for this belief in the book itself. It depends mainly upon the Commentator's identification of Vātsyāyana's *Nagara* with Pāṭaliputra which, as we have seen, is absolutely without any founda-

१ कस्त्रादिषु तु संज्ञायात्संज्ञानारं पश्यते तरिम्बू नागरेकमिति प्रस्तुदाहार्थम् । *Kāśikā* on Pāṇini, IV. 5, 178. The last part of the quotation would have *Nāgareyaka* as the correct form of derivative to designate a citizen of this particular *Nagara*, but Vātsyāyana has apparently not followed Pāṇini here, perhaps in deference to popular practice. The *Kāśikā* in accordance with the *sūtra* of Pāṇini, here lays down that the form *Nāgaraka* is derived from *Nagara* to signify abuse or expert knowledge (प्रस्तुत्वं-प्रादीप्यत्वयोः), otherwise, it will be *Nāgara*, and the example given to illustrate this point is नागरा ब्राह्मणः. Does it show that *Nāgara* Brahmanas were known to *Kāśikā*?

tion. It is remarkable that Vātsyāyana has got nothing to say of the people of Magadha. In his days, Magadha was still a great country and not extinct like Pañcāla, and its capital was still the greatest city in India. There is, therefore, no reason why Vātsyāyana should not mention the characteristics of the people of Magadha, as he has done with regard to those of other parts of India. It is argued by some (who favour the theory of Vātsyāyana being a man of Pāṭaliputra himself), that he did not like to calumniate his own people by expatiating on their sexual abuses. But this argument cannot hold, inasmuch as our author has not everywhere enumerated mere defects or abuses, but has not often delineated simple and faultless customs and habits without the least suggestion of any evil in them. It was open to him to bring out the good points in their character, as he has done in the case of the men and women of Gauḍa. We cannot think of any other reason than personal ignorance of the country of Magadha and its people for this omission on the part of Vātsyāyana. MM Haraprasād Sāstrī has pointed out that in the introduction to the *Harṣacarita*, Bāṇa who belonged to the *Vātsyāyana-gotra* says that his ancestors dwelt at some place in Magadha and hence he has argued that all the Vātsyāyanas in literature must have belonged to the same country<sup>1</sup>. This is a large generalisation which it is hard to accede to. There are Brahmins of the *Sāndilya-gotra* now in Bengal; it would hardly be a sane conclusion to derive from this fact that all the Sāndilyas that lived at any time in India were Bengalees, that the author of the *Sāndilya-sūtras*, for example, hailed from Bengal. Our Vātsyāyana was separated from Bāṇabhatta by about four centuries, and according

<sup>1</sup> *Magadhan Literature*, p. 73 ff.

to the findings of the Mahāmahopādhyāya himself, by not less than six. Is it not rather rash to imagine that they belonged to the same family located in the same spot for these many hundreds of years?

Now, we observe that though Vātsyāyana possesses more or less knowledge of all parts of India, yet he

appears to have been acquainted more thoroughly with South-Western India than with the other portions. Of the country from Rajputana to the south up to the Konkan coast, he speaks of almost all the various provinces and peoples. For example, he speaks of *A v a n t i* and *Mālava* (i.e. Eastern and Western *Mālava*), *A p a rānta*, *Lāta*, *Saurāṣṭra*, *Vidarbha*, *Mahārāṣṭra*, etc., he mentions twice the *Vatsagulmakas* of Borar and the *A n d h r a s* and the *Ābhīrās* are mentioned again and again, and he treats them with a wealth of detail which is not observed in his delineation of the peoples in other parts of India. Of the countries to the North-West he speaks of the people of Sindh and the Punjab and of some customs of the *Bāhlikā* country or Bactria. The people in the South he knows only as the *Dāksinātyas* and their country as *Dāksināyapatha* and he once mentions the *Drāvidas* and only incidentally a *Colarāja*. The people in the East he speaks of as the *Prācyas*, "the Eastern people," though he seems to know the *Gaudas* and makes a collective mention of *Vangāngakalīṅga* in one passage. He does not, as we have seen, even once speak of Magadha, nor does he notice any characteristics of the people of its capital, and of the entire country from Magadha to Rajputana he has very little to say. Once only he speaks of the *Madhyadesa* and once each of the *Saurasenas*, *Sāketa* and *A hicchatra*.

V. knows S. W.  
India more  
thoroughly than  
any other Part

This meagre mention of the countries of the central and eastern portions of Northern India and the detailed description of the customs of Western India makes it abundantly clear that Vātsyāyana had personal knowledge of the western portion alone, and that his information about the eastern regions was derived probably from the works of his predecessors like the treatise on the *Vāsika* section of the science of Erotics by Dattaka of Pāṭaliputra. That Vātsyāyana belonged to Western India may also be guessed from the fact that he makes a large number of quotations from Āpastamba's *Grhyasūtra*<sup>1</sup> as we have shown before; and it is known that the Vedic school of the Āpastambins flourished in Western India, specially in the land of the Andhras.<sup>2</sup>

1. See *ante*, pp. 12-14.

2. Buchler, *Āpastamba Dharmasūtra*, Introduction, p. xxxiii.

## CHAPTER III

### SOCIAL LIFE IN ANCIENT INDIA : AS DEPICTED IN VĀTSYĀYANA'S KAMASUTRA

#### I CASTES AND OCCUPATIONS

Vatsyayana in the *Kāmasūtra*, presents a beautifully vivid and realistic picture of various aspects of social life in India about seventeen hundred years ago. Though mainly concerned with erotics, yet he throws light on many an obscure side of Indian society, furnishing facts and circumstances hardly available from any other source. From his work we get a picture of ancient Indian society under the operation of the *Varṣasrama Dharma* of the religious law-books and while discussing the ideals and forms of marriage, Vatsyayana gives us an insight into the actual life of the young people, their loves and jealousies, their courtship and coquetry. He depicts the gay life of the *Nāgarakas*, the city-bred man of fashion of his days--his house and gardens, his daily round of pleasures, his sports and festivities, his many-sided culture and refinement. He furnishes a picture of the Indian home, of the sweet, pure and devoted Indian wife, the mistress of the household and controller of the family purse. From Vatsyayana also we can glean an account of the arts and crafts that flourished in this age of fine aesthetic tastes and artistic pursuits, and we see how the artiste, the *gāṇikā*, by virtue of her intellectual accomplishments and skill in the fine arts, occupied a position of no mean importance in society. At the same time, we realise that the merry life depicted in Vatsyayana's work, representing, as it does, but one side

of the entire Indian social structure, supplements the picture as obtained from the *Dharmaśāstras*, and the ideal life, according to Vātsyāyana, is one in which the three elements of *dharma*, *artha* and *kāma* are harmoniously blended together.

As in the *Dharmaśāstras* and the other sacred literature of India, we find, in Vātsyāyana's work, Indian Society founded upon the fourfold classification of the entire people into *varṇas* or castes, and the fourfold division of the life of each individual into *āśramas* or stages. Vātsyāyana himself declares that the very existence of the social structure is effected by the observance of the rules rendered obligatory for the maintenance of the institutions of *varṇa* and *āśrama*;<sup>1</sup> and though the subject Vātsyāyana has to deal with, does not offer many occasions for expatiating upon these matters, yet it is amply clear from casual references in the work that it was a society controlled by the *varṇāśrama* system that Vātsyāyana was depicting. Thus when referring to the various ways in which Vātsyāyana's *beau ideal*, the *Nāgaraka*, was to acquire the wealth necessary for leading his life in ease and comfort, Vātsyāyana

The Four  
Varṇas divi-  
ded according to  
Occupations

enumerates four methods of earning money, viz., acceptance of gifts (*pratigraha*), conquest (*jayā*), trade (*kṛayā*) and wages (*nirvesa*).<sup>2</sup> Of these, as the

Commentary points out, *pratigraha* or acceptance of gifts is the standard means of subsistence for a Brahmin;<sup>3</sup> of the six kinds of work which according to Manu a

१ वर्णाश्रमाचारस्थितिलक्षणत्वाच्च लोकयात्रायाः । *Kamasutra* p. 20.

२ गृहीतविधिः प्रतिग्रहजयक्रयनिवैशाधिगतैर्दृष्ट्यथागतैरुभयैर्वै गार्हस्थ्यमधिगम्य नामाकृत्य वर्तते । *Ibid.*, p. 42.

३ तत्र व्राह्मणः प्रतिग्रहेण, तद्वुत्त्वात् । *Ibid.* p. 42.

Brahmin may partake in, three enable him to earn a living, as Manu points out himself, viz., sacrificing for others (*yājāna*), teaching (*adhyāpana*) and the acceptance of gifts from pure men (*pratigraha*)<sup>1</sup> and of these three again, if looked at closely, the last viz., *pratigraha*, is evidently the actual means of earning money in the case of sacrificing and teaching also, as the remuneration offered in most cases was voluntary. Vātsyāyana who was trying to condense these matters into as few words as possible in his pithy paradigms, has spoken of *pratigraha* only as the means of acquiring a fortune in the case of Brahmins, that being essentially the only method for the purpose.

In the case of the Kṣatriyas, similarly, Manu declares that the bearing of arms is the means of subsistence<sup>2</sup>, so that Vātsyāyana's conquest (*jaya*) is practically equivalent to it. In the same way, of the three approved means of subsistence prescribed for the Vaiśya, viz., trade, rearing of cattle and agriculture<sup>3</sup>, trade is the essential element, as the produce from cattle and agriculture have to be bartered to bring money. Lastly, in the case of the Śudra, we find Manu ordaining for him the earning of a living as an artisan or craftsman<sup>4</sup> which

१ अध्यापनमध्ययनं यजनं याजनं तथा ।  
 दानं प्रतिप्रहस्तैव यद् कर्माण्यप्रजन्मनः ॥  
 परमां तु कर्मयामस्य त्रीणि कर्मणि जीविका ।  
 याजनाध्यापने चैव विशुद्धात् प्रतिप्रहः ॥

*Manava Dharmashstra, X. 75-76.*

2 शस्त्रास्त्रमृत्यं ज्ञात्रस्य । *Ibid., X. 78.*

3 वयिकृ पशुकृषि विशः । *Ibid., X. 79.*

4 अशक्तुवस्तु शुश्रूषां शूष्रः कर्तुं द्विजन्मनाम् ।  
 पुत्रदारात्यं प्राप्तो जीवेत्कारककर्मणिः ॥  
 यैः कर्मणिः प्रवर्तितः शुश्रूष्यन्ते द्विजात्यः ।  
 तानि काशककर्मणि शिश्पानि विविधानि च ॥ *Ibid., X. 99-100.*

is the same as the *nirvēśa* or working for wages of Vātsyāyana. This fourfold division of the means of earning money according to birth, shows that in Vātsyāyana's time, occupation was controlled by the caste in which one was born. In connection with another important matter of life also, *viz.*, marriage, Vātsyāyana speaks of the four castes, of higher and lower castes, and also on the advisability of the union between men and women of the same caste (*savārya*) as we shall show in the next chapter.

The Brāhmaṇas he mentions several times and as receiving special respect. Blessings vouchsafed by good Brāhmaṇas are to be coveted by everyone, says Vātsyāyana, as a source of long life and renown<sup>1</sup>. The gift of a thousand cows to Brāhmaṇas is considered to be one of the highest aims in life of a lady, even in the case of a courtesan when she is rich, although in her case the gift had to be made through a third person, as a direct gift by a fallen woman would not be acceptable to them. Even into the royal harem where the ladies were guarded against intrusion by any male person, the Brāhmaṇa had right of entry and could converse with them separated by a screen<sup>2</sup>. With regard to medical preparations for recovering health or restoring vigour, Vātsyāyana advises the use of those only that are approved of by friends and Brāhmaṇas<sup>3</sup>, the underlying

1 ब्राह्मणानां प्रशस्तानामाशिषः (यशस्यमायुष्यम् । *Kāmasutra*, p. 380.

2 गोसहस्राणां पात्रान्तरितं ब्राह्मणेन्द्रो दानं... गणिकानां सामातिशयः ।

*Ibid.*, p. 340.

3 नान्तःपुराणां रक्षण्योगात् पुरुषसन्दर्शनं विद्यते । पुष्पदाननियोगाच्चगरजाहयता राजविदितमन्तःपुराणि गच्छन्ति—पटान्तरितस्वैवामालायः । *Ibid.*, pp. 286 and 294.

4 तपोयुक्तः प्रशुभ्जीत शिष्टैरुग्रातान् विद्धीन् ।

ब्राह्मणांश्च छहनिश्च मङ्गलैरभिनन्दितान् ॥ *Ibid.*, p. 371.

idea in such recommendations being that the Brāhmaṇa was believed to be unselfish and honest.

The Brāhmaṇas as performing various religious functions and as forming various orders of monks or ascetics, are mentioned by Vātsyāyana : for example, the Śrotriya and the fire maintained constantly in his house for offering daily sacrifices, are referred to several times in the chapter on marriage<sup>1</sup>, and besides, in other places. Moreover, we find a mention of the *Brahmacārin*, the *Dikṣita* or the man initiated to perform a sacrifice, the *Pratin* or the man who has taken a special vow, and the *Līṅgin* or person who like the *Sannyāsin* of later times, has adopted certain special dross and marks<sup>2</sup>. The Commentary explains the *Līṅgin* as the *Parirajaka*—the wandering ascetic who has renounced the world<sup>3</sup>.

Vātsyāyana's work amply demonstrates the fact that sacrificial performances still formed an important element in the Brahmanical faith, in as

Brahmanical  
Sacrifices much as the setting up of large and costly fire-places or *Agni-caityas* is considered a popular form of public service along with the erection of temples, excavation of tanks, laying of parks and building of bridges etc.<sup>4</sup> The sacrificial performances on a large scale (*yajña*) afforded one of the common occasions on which it was permissible for ladies to go out of their inner apartments (*antahpura*)<sup>5</sup> to take part in

1 प्रतिपादामभिप्रतावकाश्यवर्चिनी नायकः स्त्रोत्रियागारादभिमानाद्य कुशाना-स्त्रीर्य यथास्मृति हुत्वा च त्रिः परिक्षेत् । Ibid., pp. 219-220.

2 स्त्रोत्रियस्य ब्रह्मचारिणो दीक्षितस्य व्रतिनो स्त्रियिनो वा । Ibid., p. 351.

3 स्त्रियी प्रवृजितः । Ibid., p. 301.

4 देवकुलतदागारामाणां करण्यां, स्थलीनामभिवेत्यानां निवास्थनं, गोसहस्राणां... ब्राह्मणो दानम् । Ibid., p. 310.

5 आवाहे विवाहे यज्ञे गमनं सखीभिः सह गोर्धी देवताभिगमनमित्यनुशासा कुर्वात् । Ibid., p. 26.

the public or private festivities. Again, the utility of religious or scientific treatises (*Sāstra*) for the performance of concrete practical works like sacrifices (*yajñas*)<sup>1</sup>, is referred to by Vātsyāyana, and moreover, he adds that priests officiating at sacrifices (*yājñikāḥ*), even though ignorant of grammar, were able to apply at the sacrificial rites (*Kṛtus*) the principle of *āhā* or drawing of inference which depends upon a knowledge of grammar<sup>2</sup>. These sacrificial festivities which the maidens went out of their homes to join, also afforded opportunities, according to Vātsyāyana, to a youngman for choosing his partner for life and winning the love of the girl of his selection<sup>3</sup>. At the sacrificial festivities again, the amorous lover sought for an opportunity of arranging a rendezvous with his mistress with the help of a female go-between<sup>4</sup>. Thus we observe that *Gṛhya* or household sacrifices like those performed at the household fire of the Śrotriyas, as well as the more elaborate *Srauta* rites on a large scale, formed common occurrences in the society that Vātsyāyana depicts.

Of the second caste in the social order, we find the Rājā playing a prominent part in society in Vātsyāyana's days, but it is evident that the Rājā or king, Kṣatriya though generally a Kṣatriya, was not unoften derived from other classes like the Ābhīras, and sometimes

1 अस्तीकिकत्वादद्यार्थत्वादप्रवृत्तानां यज्ञादीनां शाश्वात् प्रवर्तनम्, लौकिकत्वाद् ददा-र्थत्वाच्च प्रवृत्तेभ्यश्च मांसभक्षणादिभ्यः शाश्वादेव निवारणं धर्मः । Ibid., p. 12.

2 अस्ति व्याकरणभित्यवैयाकरणा अपि दात्रिका ऊहं क्रतुषु प्रयुक्तते । Ibid., p. 26.

3 यज्ञे विवाहे यात्रायामुत्सवे व्यसने प्रेक्षणकव्याप्ते जने तत्र तत्र च हन्तेज्जित्कारां परीज्जितभावामेकाकिनीमुपक्रमेत । Ibid., p. 213.

4 स तु देवताभिगमने यात्रायामुद्यानकोडार्यां जलावतस्ये विवाहे यज्ञवसनोत्सवे-प्रवान्मुख्याते औरतिन्नमे जनरपदस्य चकारोहणे प्रेक्षणापारेषु तेषु तेषु च कार्येष्विति । Ibid., p. 274.

perhaps he was a Brahmin. The word *Kṣatriya* is used by Vātsyāyana only once, and even there, as the special designation of a class of guards employed by the Ābhīra monarchs. This passage tells us that the seraglios of the Ābhīra kings were guarded by sentries who bore the designation of *Kṣatriyas*<sup>1</sup>. This shows apparently that the Ābhīras themselves were not Kṣatriyas, but were outside the fourfold classification of Indian society, and that they employed these Kṣatriyas considering them to be more trustworthy in guarding the harem than their own tribesmen.

The *Vaishyas* and the *Sūdras* are not expressly mentioned by Vātsyāyana, but we have seen that their caste *Vaishya* and *Sūdra* occupations are referred to by him, and besides, he mentions a number of artisans and craftsmen whose occupations are in some way connected with the life of luxury and ease that the Nāgaraka led. These are the *Mālākāra*—‘the maker of garlands’, the *Gāndhikā*—‘the perfumer’, the *Rajaka* and the *Nīlikusumbhabrañjaka*—‘the dyer and the cleaner of clothes’, the *Nāpita*—‘the barber’, the *Sāupadika*—‘the vendor of spirituous liquors’, the *Tāmbūlika*—‘the seller of betel leaves’, the *Suvārṇika* or *Suvārṇakāra*—‘the goldsmith’, the *Māṇikāra*—‘the jeweller’, the *Vaikatika*—‘the diamond-cutter’, the *Kuśilāva*—‘the actor’, the *Gāyanā*—‘the singer’ and so on<sup>2</sup>. We may compare with these last the artiste spies of Kautilya having opportunities of espying the private character of citizens, viz. the actor (*nata*), the dancer (*Naritaka*), the singer (*Gayana*), the

1. क्षत्रियसंज्ञकैरन्तपुररक्षिभिरेवार्थं साधयन्याभीरकानाम् । *Ibid.*, p. 294.

2. मालाकारगान्धिकायैगिडकरजकनापित... (*KS.*, p. 300)... उवर्णकारसमिक्तिकारवेक्षिकनीलीकुष्ठम्भरञ्जकादित्वा... (p. 259),... ताम्बूलिकसौवर्णिक... (p. 69), कुणीलवादा-गन्तव्यः... (p. 50), परिचारकसुखान् संवाहकायायनवैहासिकान् । (p. 306).

musician (*Vādaka*), the man who lives on his tongue (*Vāggirana*) and the bard (*Kuśilara*). Many of the craftsmen no doubt formed separate castes that varied according to their occupations but were commonly included under the general name of *Sūdra*. We have a mention of some females that were skilled in the arts, the *Silpakaṛikā*—‘a woman practising the arts’, the *Natī* or *Nāṭakīyā*—‘the actress’, and the *Kalāvidāgadhā*—‘the female artiste’. Here also we are reminded of Kautilya’s *Silparatyah striyah*,—‘the women proficient in the arts’, who had access to the inner apartments of the people<sup>1</sup>. He speaks of the *Silpakaṛikā* also<sup>2</sup>.

Of the higher professions, we have a reference to the astrologer (*Daiyajñī*)<sup>3</sup> and the physician (*Vaidya*)<sup>4</sup>. There is no indication in Vātsyayana’s work to show whether they formed separate castes. The *Vaidya* probably occupied a respectable position, in as much as in two passages in the *Kamasūtra*, he is mentioned with the *Mahāmātra* as an influential person and in another passage, the *Vaidya* is considered to be a person whose favour is worth acquiring by a courtesan<sup>5</sup>. The literature used by the *Vaidya*, that is the science of

1 नठन्तकगायनवादकवायन्त्रीवन्दुषीलवा: शिवशाभ्यन्तरं चारं विशः ।

*Arthabindu* p. 21.

2 ततो वेश्या आभ्यन्तरिका नाटकीयाश्च । *KS.* p. 24. ३ भिन्नाश्च: कस्ताविदवधाः...व्यास्त्वाताः । *Ibid.* p. 57.

3 अस्त्वृ हृष्टरास्तेषां कुरुज्यामनवगाङ्ककाः ।

शिल्पवत्यः जियो मूकाधिनाश्च म्लेच्छज्ञातयः ॥ *AS.* p. 21.

4 शिल्पकारिकाः कूशीलवा दास्यो वा । *AS.* p. 21.

5 दैवहा । *KS.* p. 300.

6 शूरो वैद्यशेति । *Ibid.* p. 301.

7 वैद्यमहामात्रभवनसंनिकर्त्ते । *KS.* p. 257. वैद्यमहामात्रयोरुपकारकिया कार्यहेतोः ।

p. 319.

mdeicine is called *Vaidyaka* by *Vātsyāyana* and the *Āyurveda*, or the 'science of life' is also mentioned along with the *Veda* and the *Vidyātantras*, i.e. works on various branches of science<sup>1</sup>.

*Vātsyāyana* mentions a number of government officials, but there is nothing to indicate their caste. Their position in society, however, appears to suggest that they must have belonged to the higher castes, but they need not necessarily have belonged to the Brahmin or the Ksatriya castes. We find that the *Rāṣṭriya* or governor appointed by the emperor *Candragupta Maurya*, in Western India, was the *Vaiśya* *Pūṣyagupta* and the man holding the same position in *Aśoka*'s time was the *Yavana* *Tuṣṭi-pa*, while *Rudradāman*'s governor was the *Pahlava* *Suvisākha*<sup>2</sup>, of foreign extraction no doubt, but thoroughly Indianised.

In the first place, the *Mahāmātra* is mentioned many times in the book, side by side with the king, as of a very high position in society. *Vātsyāyana*, when writing his work, had in mind as his prospective readers the daughters of kings and *Mahāmātras* who were likely to profit by his book, because in the first place, as he observes, among females it was specially they who received a liberal education—had their intellect sharpened by a study of the literature on a subject (*śāstra*)<sup>3</sup>. On festive occasions near the house of the *Mahāmātra*, a lover would try to meet and win over the lady he

1 रसवीर्दिपाका हि धर्मांसस्यापि वेशके ।

कीर्तिता इति सत् कि स्याद्वर्णयीयं विवरण्यैः ॥ *KS*. p. 170.

आयुर्वेदाच वेदाच विद्यातन्त्रे भ्य एव च ।

आप्तेभ्यश्चावोद्दृष्ट्या योगा ये प्रीतिकारकाः ॥ p. 871.

2 Junagadh Inscription of Rudradāman. *Ep. Ind.* viii. p. 42.

3 सन्त्ययि खलु शास्त्रप्रहस्तुद्यो गणिका राजपुत्रो महामात्रुहितस्त्र ॥ *KS*. p. 30.

loved<sup>1</sup>. A person who was in the good books of the Mahāmātra was considered a desirable lover by the hetarā<sup>2</sup>. The favour of the Mahāmātras was sought to be won by men in some parts of India in ways that were far from honorable, and certainly not sanctioned by codes of morality<sup>3</sup>. Vātsyāyana advises the Mahāmātras never to enter another's house on any amorous expedition, because other people would imitate the conduct of great men like themselves, and he adds that just as the sun, high up in the sky, is watched by all people in his journey across the heavens, similarly the movements of the Mahāmātras are keenly watched by men; therefore they should not do anything that was unworthy or dishonourable. Vātsyāyana also speaks of persons that were harassed by the Mahāmātras<sup>4</sup> and he speaks in similar terms of the Rājavallabha or the favourite of the king<sup>5</sup> who was marked generally by violent and sinister conduct. The Mahāmātra of Vātsyāyana appears to be, as in the Arthashastra of Kautilya<sup>6</sup>, a designation for high government officials in general, including provincial governors, as in Aśoka's edicts. Besides the Mahāmātra, Vātsyāyana also mentions the

1 भिक्षार्तमहामात्रवैद्यमवनसनिकर्वे विवाहयज्ञोत्सवव्यसनोद्यानामातिषु ।

Ibid., pp. 257-8.

2 राजनि महामात्रं च सिद्धः । AS. p. 300.

3 महामात्रे ज्वरायामन्तःपुरायि निषि सेवयाऽर्थात् राजान्मुपाद्युक्तिः दृश्यनीयाः स्वभावार्थः प्रीतिदायमेव महामात्रामन्त्रो ददति । AS. p. 287. पृतैरेव कारणैर्महामात्रसंबद्धा राजसंबद्धा वा तत्रैकदेशाचारिणी काचिदन्या वा कार्यसंपादिनी विधिका पञ्चमीति चारायणः । ॥. 65

4 न राहा महामात्राणां वा परभवनप्रवेष्टो विद्यते, महाजनेन हि चरितमेषां दृश्यते तु विधीयते च । सवितारमुद्यन्तं त्रयो लोकाः पश्यन्त्यनूद्याः त च गच्छन्तमपि पश्यन्त्यनुप्रतिष्ठन्ते च । तस्मादशक्यत्वात् गर्भनीयत्वाच्च न ते कृथा किञ्चिददाचरेयुः । AS. p. 281.

5 महामात्राभित्तानाम् । AS. p. 285.

6 तस्यैव राजवृषभस्य क्रौद्यप्रभावाधिकस्य... । AS. p. 349.

7 AS. pp. 16 and 20.

Ma n t r i n on whose shoulders rested the heavy burden of state,<sup>1</sup> as a person who should never have anything to do with filthy practices.<sup>2</sup> This Ma n t r i n, the pillar of the state, seems to be the Prime-minister and superior to the Mahāmātras, or he may be a member of the *Mantri-pariṣad* of Kauṭilya.<sup>3</sup> Of the superior officers, Vātsyāyana also speaks of the Dharmasthās or Dharmādhi karāṇasthās, the dispensers of law and justice<sup>4</sup> and four of the Adhyakṣas or superintendents in charge of the departments of state, beside the Uttarakhyakṣa or a superior officer in general.<sup>5</sup> These *adhyakṣas* or departmental superintendents mentioned by Vātsyāyana, are only such as come in contact with women in the ordinary course of their duties and have thus opportunities, as Vātsyāyana avers, of winning their love without much risk to themselves. Such an officer is the Gavādhyakṣa who had access to cowherdesses.<sup>6</sup> The Sūtrādhyakṣa, the Superintendent of spinning and weaving, had dealings with widows, helpless women and female mendicants<sup>7</sup> who spun yarn for the Government and brought it to him for his approval and also for their wages ; Kauṭilya gives a fuller list of such women—"Widows, cripple women, mendicant or ascetic women (*pravrajītā*), women compelled to work in default of paying fines (*dandaprati karīnī*), mothers of prostitutes, old women-servants

1 मन्त्री वा राजधर्मः । *KS.* p. 170.

2 न कारयेदौपरिष्टकम् । *KS.* p. 170.

3 *AS.* I. 15.

4 धर्मस्थेषु व्यवहारेदिति । *KS.* p. 343. धर्माधिकरणस्था, p. 300.

5 अकृशभूत उत्तराध्यक्षोऽव्यापागमिष्यति स्त्रामी पिता वा । *KS.* p. 343.

6 यथा ब्रजयोषितिः सह गवाध्यक्षस्य । *KS.* p. 282. गोध्यक्ष of Kauṭilya, *AS.* II. 29.

7 विभवाऽनाथाप्रदूजिताभिः सह सूत्राध्यक्षस्य । *Ibid.* p. 282.

of the king, and prostitutes (*deradāsī*) who have ceased to attend temples on service, shall be employed to cut wool, fibre, cotton, panicle (*tūla*), hemp and flax.”<sup>1</sup> The *Pāṇyādhya kṣa*—the Superintendent of merchandise—the same as the *Pāṇyādhya kṣa* of Kauṭilya, has dealings with women in the course of purchase and sale of various articles<sup>2</sup>. But he says that honest women also often earn a living for themselves by spinning: “Those women who do not stir out of their houses (*aniskāśinah*), those whose husbands are gone abroad, and those who are cripple or girls, may when obliged to work for subsistence, be provided with work (spinning out threads) in due courtesy through the medium of maid-servants (of the weaving establishment).” He therefore prescribes strict rules so that they may work with honour: “Those women who can present themselves at the weaving house shall at dawn be enabled to exchange their spinning for wages (*bhāndaretanavini-mayam*). Only so much light as is enough to examine the threads shall be kept.” Besides, he provides punishment if the Superintendent is tempted to look at the faces of such women or presumes to talk with them on any other topic except that of the business immediately in hand.<sup>3</sup>

A similar person is the *Nāgara*, the officer in charge of a city, that is, the Superintendent of the city police who in his rounds in the town at night meets wandering women going to meet their lovers and has power over them, in as much as he comes to be in possession of the secrets of their movements.<sup>4</sup> In the

1 Shama Sastri's Translation of the *AS*. p. 140.

2 क्षयविकारे पश्योदयत्वस्य । *AS*. p. 283.

3 *AS*, Shama Sastri's Translation, p. 141.

4 सर्वद्वयाद्वावदने वाटन्तीभिन्नागरस्य । *AS*. p. 288.

villages also the government officer, *Āyukta kā*, in charge of a village, when he is a young man and the son of a leading husbandman himself, has easy access to the village-women who can be won over simply for the asking and who are called *Carṣayis*.<sup>1</sup> With them he gets into contact on various accounts such as in works which they have to render without wages (*visti*), in storing and taking out things from the store-house, in cleaning the house, in work on the fields, in receiving cotton and wool and the fibrous skin of flax and hemp, in accepting yarn spun by them, and in sale, purchase and exchange of various articles.<sup>2</sup>

The *Āśvādhyakṣa* or the Master of the horse is also referred to in another connection.<sup>3</sup> Two female officers, the *Kañcukīyā*, the female overseer of the women's apartments and the *Mahat-tarikā* are mentioned by *Vātsyāyana* as employed in the harems of kings.<sup>4</sup> They are employed by the queens in sending messages accompanied by various presents to the king.<sup>5</sup> In the dramas we generally find male officers of advanced years employed as the *Kañcukin* or Chamberlain, but here a woman is found to be so appointed.

We may add here a few words with regard to the institution of *Āśrama* which, as we have already seen,

1. यामाचिप्तेरायुक्तकर्त्त्वं इतोत्थवृत्तिपुनरात्म यूनो ग्रामीणोऽस्तो वर्णमात्रसाद्या ताप्तवर्णय इत्याचक्षते विदा: । *KS.*, p. 282.

2. ताप्ति: सह विष्टिकर्मष्ट कोषागारप्रबोधे द्रव्याणां निष्क्रमणप्रवेशयोर्भवत्प्रतिसंरक्षणे क्षेत्रकर्मणि कर्पासोर्यात्सीश्वरवर्षक्षतादार्जे सूत्रपतिप्रहे द्रव्याणां क्रयचिक्षणविभिन्नयेतु तेषु तेषु च कर्मष्ट संप्रयोगः । *KS.* p. 282.

3. काशिराजं जयत्सेनमश्वाच्यक्षः । *KS.* p. 287.

4. कन्त्युकीया महत्तरिका वा । *KS.* p. 248.

5. तदादाय राजा निमाल्लमासां प्रतिप्राभृतकं द्यात् । *KS.* p. 243.

Vātsyāyana speaks of as forming beside Varṇa, the other great foundation of Indian society<sup>1</sup>. He makes it clearer in his introductory chapter on the realisation of the threefold goal of human life (*Trirarga*). Thus he says, "Man, whose term of life, is a hundred years, should divide the whole of this period and practise the *trirarga*, that is *Dharma*, *Artha* and *Kāma*, in such a manner that they may harmonize together and not clash in any way."<sup>2</sup> He explicitly lays down also directions for making this division. Thus he advises that in the first part of life (*Bālyā*) which appears to include both boyhood and adolescence, one should devote oneself to such objects as the acquisition of learning, and in youth—*Yauvana*—to enjoyment (*Kāma*). In old age one should practise *Dharma* and further, seek the realisation of the ultimate goal of man's life viz. *Mokṣa* or the final emancipation from the bonds of life and death; but, he goes on, as life is uncertain, these objects should be pursued just as they come to hand. However, he enjoins strictly that until a man finishes his education, he should practise *brahmācarya*, or lead a life of perfect chastity,<sup>3</sup> that is, as both Manu and Yājñavalkya affirm, so long as he is a student, he must not swerve from the vow of chastity (*avipluta-brahmacarya*).<sup>4</sup> This is the *Brahmacaryāśrama* or the first stage of life of the *Dharmaśāstras*. The *Brahmacārin* is also referred to in the *Vaisika* section of the *Kāmasūtra*.<sup>5</sup>

Of the second stage of life, Vātsyāyana says that

1. See ante, p. 98.

2. शतायुर्वै पुरुषो विभव्य कालमन्योन्यानुवद्धं परस्परस्यानुपवासकं त्रिर्गं सेवेत् ।

KS. p. 11.

3. बाल्ये विद्याग्रहणादीनर्थान् । कामं च यौवने । स्थाविरे धर्मं मोक्षं च । अनित्यत्वा दायुषो वयोपादं वा सेवेत् । ब्रह्मवर्यमेव त्वाविद्याग्रहणात् । Ibid., pp. 11-12.

4. *Manu*, iii. 2. *Yājñavalkya*, i. 52.

5. *Ibid.*, p. 851.

after getting one's education one should enter into the life of the householder (Gārhastha), that is, one should marry and settle down as a Nāgaraka<sup>1</sup>. As the Kāmasūtra occupies itself entirely with this period when one enjoys life, Vātsyāyana has very little occasion to speak of the third and fourth āśramas of the Vānaprastha and the Yati respectively. But he speaks of the Lingins—that is, ascetics who wore the special marks and garments

of their respective sects.<sup>2</sup> Female ascetics  
Asetics—Male and Female find more prominent mention as *Pravrajitā*, *Śramaṇā*, *Kṣapanikā*, *Tāpasi*, *Bhikṣuki*, *Mundā* etc.<sup>3</sup> Of these, as we shall show hereafter, the Śramaṇā appears to be the Buddhist nun and the Kṣapanikā, the Jain Sādhvī, while the Tāpasi seems to belong to the Brahmanical faith. The name *Pravrajitā* appears to be applied to female ascetics in general. The *Pravrajitā* sometimes earned a living, as we have seen, by spinning.<sup>4</sup> In the case of the *Bhikṣuka*<sup>5</sup> and the *Bhikṣuki* it is difficult to decide whether these are Sanscritized forms of the Buddhist *Bhikṣu* and *Bhikṣuṇī*, or mean religious mendicants in general. In the inscriptions of the Śātavāhanas who were not very much anterior to Vātsyāyana, as well as of the contemporary epigraphic records of the Kṣaharātas, we find permanent endowments being made sometimes in favour of Buddhist *Bhikṣus* and sometimes again, in favour of *Bhikṣus* of all denominations. For example, Vāsiṣṭhiputra Śri-Pulumāvi records a grant<sup>6</sup> to

<sup>1</sup> गृहीतविद्यः.....गार्हस्थ्यमधिगम्य नागरकृतं कर्त्ते । Ibid., p. 42.

<sup>2</sup> Ibid., pp. 801 and 351.

<sup>3</sup> Ibid., pp. 65-67, 225, 275 etc. We shall speak of them more fully hereafter.

<sup>4</sup> See *ante*, p. 107, f.n. 7.

<sup>5</sup> *KS.*, p. 300.

<sup>6</sup> *Ep. Ind.* viii, p. 60.

Buddhist *Bhikṣus* of the Bhadāyaniya sect, while Usavadāta, the son-in-law of the Kṣaharāta ruler, Nahapāna, records in a rock-cave at Nāsik that he had made a gift of some land for the *Bhikṣus* coming from all quarters, that is, as Senart translates, "From it food will be procured for all monks, without distinction, dwelling in my cave."<sup>1</sup>

All these ascetics, male and female, belong to the fourth stage of life, inasmuch as they had avowedly renounced the world, though some, as we see from what Vātsyāyana says of them, might have been persons of questionable morals. But we must remember that Vātsyāyana has occasion to speak of them only as persons who were likely to be of help (*sahāya*) to Nāgarakas and their mistresses and besides, to courtesans, in carrying their messages of love, as they had easy access to houses of citizens, and even to the *antahpura* or the inner apartments of the ladies.<sup>2</sup> It is, besides, a dilemma for a courtesan to solve whether it would be right conduct (*dharma*) for her, or the reverse, to reciprocate the feelings of an avowed ascetic like a *Brahmacārin* or a *Līṅgin*, when it becomes apparent that love unrequited would bring about his death :<sup>3</sup> one way she would be guilty of abetting a breach of the vow of chastity, and the other way, she would make herself responsible for the death of a holy man, as the Commentary explains.

To the Vānaprastha we have absolutely no reference at all, as the recluse in the forest was beyond the scope Vānaprastha Stage going out of vogue when V. wrote of the *Kāmasāstra* even as a helper in the course of love. Moreover, it seems that this Brahmanical institution of the third *Aśrama*

<sup>1</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 79.

<sup>2</sup> *KS.* p. 274, 225, 285, etc.

<sup>3</sup> शोकियस्य व्रज्ञाचारियो दीक्षितस्य ब्रह्मिनो लिङ्गिनो वा मां हृष्टु । जातरागदेव मुख्योमित्रवाक्यादात्मृशंस्याच गमन खमोऽधर्मं इति संशयः । *KS.* p. 351.

was going out of vogue. The *Vaikhānasa Dharmapraśna* tells us, that it was Brāhmaṇas alone who passed through all the four stages, the Kṣatriyas went through only three, and the Vaiśyas two—the stages of the student and the householder<sup>1</sup>. The Sūdra, apparently, was a householder throughout. The Great Epic shows the Kuru elders as passing to the forest life, but none of them emerged out of it into the life of the *Yati* or the *Parivrajaka* which was reserved for the Brahmins alone. Due to the influence of Buddhism and Jainism and the innate religious tendency of the Indian mind, there were many ascetics in the country—the Lingins of Vātsyāyana, but very few of them appear to have come through the regular course of four stages as prescribed in the *Dharmaśāstras*. It seems that the third *āśrama*, that of the Vānaprastha, was going out of vogue in Indian society by the time that Vātsyāyana wrote his book, though of ascetics of various denominations there was no dearth at any time.

---

1 ब्राह्मणास्थाप्ताभ्यामाभ्यत्वारः । क्षत्रियस्थाप्तारूप्यः । वैश्यस्थाप्तौ । तदाभिभृत्यत्वारो  
न्नद्यत्वारी गृहस्थो वानप्रस्थो भिजुरिति । 1.1, 10-13.

## CHAPTER IV

### SOCIAL LIFE IN ANCIENT INDIA AS DEPICTED IN VÂTSYÂYANA'S KÂMASŪTRA

#### II. MARRIAGE AND COURTSHIP

With regard to marriage, Vâtsyâyana is in general agreement with the *Dharmaśāstras*, both with reference to the ideals as well as the procedure to be followed in the preliminary pourparlers leading to a settlement between the parties and also the ceremonies with which the hymeneal knot was finally tied. We have already seen how he quotes Āpastamba with regard to the selection of a bride<sup>1</sup>. The influence of Manu upon him must have been immense, in as much as we find that according to Vâtsyâyana it was Manu that separated the Dharma portion from the all-embracing cyclopaedia of Prajapati.<sup>2</sup> Yâjñavâlkyâ, again, according to the generally accepted view of scholars, could not have been far removed from his time,<sup>3</sup> and an agreement between the two may naturally be expected. In addition to the *Dharmaśāstra* rules, however, Vâtsyâyana often looks at matters from the common sense point of view and delineates the actual state of things in his time.

In the society depicted by Vâtsyâyana, no marriage could take place, as we have already seen, until a young

1 See *ante*, pp. 12-15.

2 तस्यैकदेशं स्वार्थमुचो मनुर्धर्माधिकारिकं पृथक् चकार । *KS.*, p. 4.

3 Winteritz, *Geschichte*, p. 4982 says that he cannot be earlier than the third or fourth century A.C.

man had completed his education<sup>1</sup>, until he had passed through to the end of the Vedic lore, as Yājñavalkya asserts<sup>2</sup>. Again, in his chapter on marriage, Vātsyāyana emphasises the point that it was an educated man (śrūta vān) who was to look for a bride<sup>3</sup>. "It is only the educated man who is entitled to the householder's life," declares Medbhātīthi while expounding the corresponding passage of Manu and moreover, he affirms in the same connection, "Mere study of the Veda is not enough, its meaning also must have been mastered<sup>4</sup>." Even Siddhārtha, the Śākyā prince was refused the hand of Gopā by her father, Dandapāṇi the Śākyā, who according to the *La litavistara*, thus made reply to the proposal for marriage offered by Śuddhodana : "His Highness the Prince has been nurtured amidst ease and comfort, while it is our family-custom that a girl is to be given away to one proficient in the arts and not to one ignorant of them. The Prince is neither skilled in the arts nor is he acquainted with the art of warfare with the sword and the bow. How then could I bestow my daughter upon one ignorant in the arts,"<sup>5</sup> The Prince, the same book informs us, had to exhibit his learning and prowess, his proficiency in the arts and sciences, before he could get the hand of the girl of his choice. When

1 See *ante*, pp. 110-11.

2 वेदं द्रूतानि वा पारं नीत्वाप्युभयमेव वा । अविष्लुतव्यवचन्यो लक्षणयां शिष्मुद्दहेत् ।  
Yājñavalkya *Saṃhitā*, I, 51—52.

3 श्रुतवान् शीलयेत् । *KS.* p. 184.

4 विद्वानेव हि गार्हस्थ्येऽधिक्रियते । ...अतः फ्लितमेतत् नाधीत्यैव विवाहो यावद्-दार्थो नाविगतः । *Medbhātīthi on Manu*, III, 2.

5 दगडपाणिराह । आर्यकुमारो गृहे सुखसंवृद्धः । आस्माके चार्य कुलधर्मः शिलपञ्चल्यकन्या दातव्या नाशिलपञ्चल्येति । कुमारश्च न शिलपञ्चो नासिध्यनुष्ठकलापयुद्धसाजलम्बविधिः । तत् कथमशिलपञ्चायाहं दुहितरं दास्यामि ।

*La litavistara*, ed. Lefmann, p. 143.

we bear in mind that the *Lalitaristara* was written about the same time as the *Kimasutra*<sup>1</sup>, the above episode in the life of Buddha gives us an insight into the mentality of the people of the period with regard to the necessity of a liberal and technical education before marriage.

The object of marriage, according to Indian ideals, was the obtainment of a son who would be competent

V.'s Ideals of Marriage both Secular and Spiritual to offer gifts and oblations after one is gathered to one's forefathers. \* *Vātsyāyana* although mainly concerned with the physical side of marriage, relating to the pleasures

and amenities of married life, yet is not unmindful of the other ideals of worldly gain, social position and the spiritual welfare of the couple. To him a good marriage secures the ends of *Dharma* and *Artha*,—that is, both spiritual as well as social and economic welfare and besides, progeny, increase of relatives and friends and also untarnished, genuine love. With this we may compare the five things that determine marriage according to the *Mānara Grhyasūtra*, viz. wealth, personal charms, learning, wisdom and friends<sup>2</sup> The objects of marriage, says *Vātsyāyana*, can best be secured by a man by his acquisition according to the laws sanctioned by the holy writ (*sūtra*), of a

Marriage only with a Girl of the same Caste virgin not given to any one before, and coming from the same caste as himself.<sup>4</sup> He further adds that with men of all the

four *Vargas* in society, when love is fixed upon a

<sup>1</sup> Winternitz, *Op. cit.*, II, 200.

<sup>2</sup> पुराये किथते भावी पुत्रः विद्याप्रदोषः ।

<sup>3</sup> पन्न विवाहकारत्वानि भवन्ति—वित्तं रूपं विद्या प्रज्ञा वान्धवा इति । *Mānara-Grhyasūtra*, ed. Kuauer, p.

<sup>4</sup> सवर्णायामनन्यपूर्णं गां शास्त्रोऽविगतायां धर्मोऽर्थः पुत्राः सम्बन्धः पश्चाद्द्विरुद्धं प्रस्तुता रतिः । *KS*, p. 184.

virgin who belongs to the same caste and who has been won in accordance with the prescriptions of the sacred laws, then it provides the means of getting lawful progeny, secures a good name in the world and besides, obtains the approval of the public. The contrary practice, he goes on, of *Kāma* or love directed towards women of the higher castes, or towards those that have been married to others, even though belonging to the same caste, is prohibited.<sup>1</sup> Love only, and not marriage, may be

Love not  
Marriage,  
permitted with  
other Castes

offered to a woman of a higher caste, when she is a *svairiṇī*, that is, of unrestrained movements—a woman who has had many lovers before,<sup>2</sup> and in such a case,

Vātsyāyana assures us, there will be no violation of *Dharma* or Law. Love with women of a caste lower than one's own, but even then not excommunicated from their own castes, with public women or with the *Punarbhūs*, that is, widows who, unable to lead a life of continence and restraint, sought for a lover, was neither approved of as decent conduct (*sīṣṭa*), nor was it prohibited, as the object in these cases was pleasure only.<sup>3</sup> In this last case, Vātsyāyana means to say that while such practice was not favoured by the better section of the community, it was not absolutely condemned by the public as the object of such union was simply pleasure and the woman was not expected to partake with him, like the lawful wife (*patni*), in the ceremonial rites, nor was she expected to give birth to lawful progeny as the

1 कामश्चतुर्षु वर्णेणु सवर्णातः शास्त्राभ्यपूर्वात्मां प्रयुज्यमानः पुन्नीयो यशस्यो लौकिकश्च मवति। तद्विपरीत उत्तमवर्णाद्विपरीताद्विपरीताद्विपरीताद्विपरीतः । Ibid., p. 60.

2 स यदा मन्यते स्वैरिणीयमन्यतोऽपि बहुशो व्यवसितचारित्रा तस्यां वेश्यायामिव गमनसुत्तमवर्णिन्यामपि न धर्मपीडां करिष्यति । Ibid., p. 61.

3 अवरवर्णांस्वनिवसिताद्विश्याद्वु पुनर्भूत्वा न शिष्टो न प्रतिविदः इत्यार्थत्वाद् । Ibid., p. 60.

Commentary explains<sup>1</sup>. This is an important point to bear in mind as it serves to explain the mentality of the Indian law-givers. Offerings made by the progeny begot on such women would not be acceptable to the gods or the manes, therefore to take them to wife for having sons from them was unthinkable. Manu, though permitting *anuloma* marriage with a woman of a lower caste, including the Śūdra, proceeds, in the very same breath, most emphatically to condemn such marriage with a Śūdra woman and quotes a number of ancient authorities of whom even the most liberal would not permit a person of the twice born castes to have a son on a Śūdra woman. Thus says Manu, "According to Atri and to (Gautama) the son of Utathya, he who weds a Śūdra woman, becomes an outcast, according to Saunaka, on the birth of a son and according to Bhṛgū, he who has (male) offspring from a (Śūdra female, alone). A Brāhmaṇa who takes a Śūdra wife to his bed, will (after death) sink into hell; if he begets a child by her, he will lose the rank of a Brāhmaṇa. The manes and the gods will not eat the (offerings) of that man who performs the rites in honour of the gods, of the manes, and of guests chiefly with a (Śūdra wife's) assistance and such (a man) will not go to heaven."<sup>2</sup> Yajñavalkya condemns such marriage categorically: "What is said about the acquisition of a wife from the Śūdra caste, does not commend itself to me, for the reason that one's

1 ताऽप्रयुज्यमानो न शिष्टो न विहितः, ..परिगृहापि न प्रतिषिद्धः, उत्ताप्तवात्, तदानीं द्वारायैव प्रवृत्तिः, न पुत्रायां । Ibid. p. 60.

2 शूद्रावेदी पतस्यत्रे हस्तध्यतनपत्स्य च । शौनकस्य द्वितोत्पत्स्या तदपत्स्यतया भृगोः ॥ गूद्रां शयनमारोद्य ब्राह्मणो यात्यधोगतिम् । जनवित्वा सुते तस्यां ब्राह्मणयादेव हीयते ॥ दैवपित्रातियेवानि ततुप्रथानानि यस्य तु । नाशनित फिलदेवास्तत्र च स्वर्गं स गच्छति ॥

Manu, III, 16—18. Trans. Buehler, *Manu*, pp. 78—9

own self is born in her."<sup>1</sup> At the present day, inter-marriage between castes is not permitted by Hindu India under any circumstances, whether with superior or

inferior castes, and we already notice a  
stiffness growing towards the question  
during the few centuries that intervened  
between Manu and Vātsyāyana. While Manu  
permits *anuloma* marriage, and that even with a Śūdra  
girl, though under protest, Yājñavalkya would exclude  
the Śūdra absolutely from its scope Vātsyāyana who  
gives a nearer view of the actual condition of society,  
would not countenance anything but marriage inside one's  
own caste, all connection with a woman of an inferior  
caste (*avaravarnā*) is placed by him in the same category  
as love with public women, and he would not consider it  
as serious marriage at all.

After laying down this first requisite about marriage connected with *Dharma*, Vātsyāyana next proceeds to speak of the purely secular circumstances about which a person thinking about marriage should be satisfied. He says that to obtain the full benefits of a marriage, one

should seek for mate a girl satisfying the  
following conditions. She should have  
both her parents alive, she must be  
younger than himself by three years or more ; she should  
come of a family of decent and approved conduct, possessed  
of wealth and rich in adherents, a family, the members  
of which are numerous and attached to one another, her  
relatives both on the father's side as well as on the  
mother's, should be large in number ; and for herself,  
she must be a girl possessed of physical charms, of

1 यदुच्यते द्विजातीर्णं शूद्राहारोपसंप्रहः । न तन्मम भवतं यस्मात्तत्रात्मा जायते  
त्वयम् ॥ तिसो वर्णासुपूर्वेण द्वे तथैका यथाक्रमम् । आद्याहात्रियविषां भाव्यां  
स्वा शूद्रजन्मनः ॥ *Yājñavalkya-Samhitā*, I. 56—57.

excellent conduct, with lucky marks on her body ; she should have neither more nor less than the proper number of teeth, nails, ears, hair, eyes and breasts, nor should any of these limbs have been lost by her ; she should be of a sound and healthy constitution ; the young man should, of course, be possessed of all these qualities himself and must have completed his studies.' Vatsyayana, perhaps feeling that a girl possessed of all these

### Y-adhesive

v. advises--  
"Marry the Girl  
that will make  
you happy"

V. advises—  
"Marry the Girl  
that will make  
you happy"  
qualities would be rare indeed, quotes in  
the very next *sūtra* the opinion of an earlier  
writer on the subject, Ghotakamukha,  
who simplifies the whole thing by advising  
that a man should fix his affections on a girl when he  
would feel himself fortunate and happy in having her  
and at the same time would not incur the censure of  
his equals<sup>2</sup>.

It is not to be understood, however, that Vātsyāyana advises a young man to seek for a bride of a social rank higher than his own; on the other hand, he specially sounds a distinct note of warning against all unequal unions, showing his intimate knowledge of the world.

Marriage to be happy, must be between Equals in Social Status

Here he quotes certain verses:—"Social games, such as, for example, filling up 'bouts rimes,' marriages, and intercourse

generally, should be with a man's equals, not with those either above or below him. A man marries above him when he marries a girl only to be treated by her and her friends as a servant ever afterwards; no

१. तस्मात्कन्यामभिजनोपेतां मातापिलूमर्ती त्रिवर्षीत्प्रमृति न्यूनवयसं गताध्याचारे  
धनवति पक्षवति कुले सम्बन्धिश्रिये सम्बन्धिभिराकुले प्रसूतां प्रभूतमातापितृपक्षां रुपशील-  
लक्षणासम्पज्जामन्दू नाथिकाविनष्टवृन्तवस्त्वर्कर्त्तेकेशक्षिस्तनीमरोगिप्रकृतिशरीरे तथाविध एव  
श्री तत्पात्राजीलयेत् । *KS*, p. 184.

३ यां गृहीत्वा कृतिकमात्मानं मन्येत न च समानैर्निन्द्येत तस्यां प्रवृत्तिरिति  
बोद्धकमः । Ibid. p. 185.

man of spirit will do that. He marries below him when he and his people lord it over the girl, that is a bad marriage ; it too is censured by the good. When the love between husband and wife adds lustre to both, and is a source of joy to both families, that is the only marriage which is approved. Let a man, if he will, marry above him, and walk humbly among his wife's relations ever afterwards ; but on no account let him do, what all good men disapprove of, marry beneath him.”<sup>1</sup>

With regard to the qualities of a desirable bride, *Vātsyāyana* again specifies certain physical and other defects which would render a girl unfit for *Vātsyāyana's List of Defects and Disqualifications of a Bride* selection. Here, as we have shown before, *Vātsyāyana* quotes from the *Gṛhyasūtra* of *Āpastamba* : thus he prescribes—“Let him give up a girl who, when the

wooers come to woo, is found asleep, in tears, or out. Let him shun also these sixteen—1, a girl with a unlucky name ; 2, one who has been kept in concealment ; 3, one who is betrothed to another man ; 4, one with red hair ; 5, one with spots ; 6, a masculine woman ; 7, one with a big head ; 8, a bandy-legged woman ; 9, one with a broad forehead ; 10, one ceremonially impure ; 11, the fruit of an improper marriage ; 12, one who has menstruated ; 13, one who is or has been pregnant ; 14, an old friend ; 15, one who has a younger sister much handsomer than herself ; and 16, one that hath a moist hand”.<sup>2</sup>

Many of the terms in which these short-comings are worded are technical expressions the meanings of which are doubtful, we having to depend upon the explanation offered by the commentators. The above translation is based upon the commentary to the *Kāma-*

1 *Kāmakūtra*, pp. 190-1. Trans. PETERSON, *JBBRAS*, xviii, p. 117.

2 *Ibid.*, pp. 113—114.

*sūtra*, whereas the commentators of Āpastamba such as Haradatta and Sudarśanārya, interpret some of the words in a different way. As the terms, however, are not of any great importance, we need not be detained by them.

Vātsyāyana also quotes another rule about the name of the girl—"A girl bearing the name of a constell-

Defects in  
Names—never  
considered a  
Serious Disability tion, a river, or of a tree is objectionable and besides a girl, the last letter but one of whose name is *l* or *r*, is to be avoided in wooing."<sup>1</sup> A woman who is too white

or too dark in complexion, should be avoided even as a mistress *ad pari passu* as a wife, and similar prohibition holds in the case of a woman afflicted with leprosy, insanity etc.,<sup>2</sup> It may be observed here that inspite of the insistence of law-givers and Vātsyāyana's support of them, the defects about names have never been considered in India as a serious disability, and they appear to have been more obeyed in their breach than in their observance. Thus in ancient times as at the present day, some of the most popular names are names, of constellations like Rohini and Cītrā, of rivers like Gaṅgā and Yamunā, or names with penultimate 'l' or 'r' like Apālā and Viśvavārā—authoresses of R̥gvedic hymns<sup>3</sup>, and Kamalā and Tārā of later days.

Conscious that some of the many defects enumerated above are unavoidable and others are of a too technical V.'s final Advice—  
'Marry the Girl'  
on whom the  
Heart and the  
Eyes are set character, Vātsyāyana, as in a previous case, when he quoted Ghoṭakamukha, quotes a simpler and more liberal rule from an ancient authority, in this case the Gr̥hyasutra of Āpastamba,

1. नहन्त्रारुद्यं नदीनाम्नीं बृहन्नाम्नीं च गहिताम् । लकारेषोपान्तर्च च वरणे परिकर्जयेत् ॥ *KS.*, p. 188.

2. अराम्यास्त्वेवैताः, दुष्टिन्युन्मत्ता पतिता भिजरहस्या प्रकाशप्रार्थिनी गतप्राय-यौवनाऽतिश्वेताऽतिकृष्णा दुर्गन्धा सम्बन्धिनी, सखी प्रवृजिता संबन्धसखिश्रोत्रियराज-दाराणा । *Ibid.*, p. 67.

3. *RV.*, viii. 91, 7 & v. 28.

“He will be a happy husband who marries the woman on whom his heart and his eye are set. Let a man not think of any other. So some say.”<sup>1</sup> Here Vātsyāyana approves of a selection made not according to minute and detailed technical rules, but on the general impression produced by the whole appearance. As in the everyday world, people were likely to be guided by this impression at first sight. Hence Vātsyāyana advises the parents and relatives of a girl when she has reached the marriageable age, to array her in a smart dress, and thus dressed she should sport every afternoon with her girl friends; at festivities like sacrifices, marriage celebrations, and, in fact, wherever there is a concourse of people, care should be taken to show her to advantage in society, for the reason, Vātsyāyana asserts, that such a girl is of the nature of an article of trade.<sup>2</sup>

With regard to the comparative age of the couple to be married, Vātsyāyana prescribes that the bride should be younger by three years or more.<sup>3</sup> In another passage which Vātsyāyana quotes from the *Grhyasūtra* of Āpastamba, an expression (*svānujā*) is taken by the Commentator to mean “considerably less in age” and in support of his statement, he quotes a text, most probably from a *Dharma-*

1 यस्यां मनश्चनुचोर्निवन्धस्तस्यामृद्दिनेतरामाद्रियेत्येके । Ibid. p. 188. Trans. Peterson, *op. cit.*, p. 114. *Ap. Gr.S.* I. 3, 20.

2 नित्यं प्रसाधितायाः सखीभिः सह क्रीडा, यज्ञविवाहाविषु जनसन्द्रावेषु प्रायश्चिक दर्शनं तथोत्सवेषु च पर्यसर्धमत्वात् ॥ Ibid., p. 188.

3 त्रिवर्षात् प्रमृति न्यूनवयसम् । *KS.* p. 181.

4 स्ववृजामिति, त्रिवर्षात् प्रमृति न्यूनवयसमित्यस्य शेषः स्मृतुं पश्चात्जातामित्यथः । यथोक्तम्—‘वतु यथाददृष्टं यावत्कनिधां वत्सरे वरात्। कन्या परिष्यायेल्लङ्घस्ता नेतरातिवयात् यात्’॥ *KS.*, pp. 187—188.

*sāstra*, which lays down that one should marry a girl who is in the fourth to the eighth year below him, that is, who is younger in age by three to seven years, neither more nor less. But the word *svanujā* is taken by others to mean a girl who has a fine younger sister<sup>1</sup>. The *Dharmaśāstras*, however, contemplate a far greater disparity in years, the correct ratio prescribed being generally one to three. Thus we have in the *Viṣṇu-Purāṇa*: "One should marry a wife whose age is a third of one's own",<sup>2</sup> and the same rule is also laid down by the *Mahābhārata*—that a man of thirty years should marry a girl of ten<sup>3</sup>. Manu also prescribes the same thing, the relative proportion being either thirty and twelve or twenty-four and eight<sup>4</sup>. This seems to have been the ideal of the religious lawgivers, but *Vātsyāyana* seems to represent the actual state of things more closely. And it should be noticed that both *Medhātithi* and *Kullūka* in their comments on the passage of Manu quoted above, states that the rule about age was not absolute<sup>5</sup> but only shows the approximate relation between the ages of the couple.

1. See Buehler, S B E. Vol. XXX. p. 257, and Peterson, J B R R A S. Vol. XVIII. p. 114.

2. वर्षरक्षणां भार्यासुद्धितं त्रिशुषाः स्वयम् । *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*, III. 10. 16.

3. त्रिशृङ्खर्षो दशवर्षी भार्यां विन्देत नप्तिकाम् । एकविशतिवर्षो वा सप्तवर्षमवा-  
प्नुयात् ॥ *Mbt.* XIII. 44. 14

4. त्रिशृङ्खर्षो वहेत्र कन्यां द्वयां द्वादशवर्षिकीम् । त्र्याष्टवर्षाऽद्वयवर्षो वा धर्मे सीदति  
सत्त्वः ॥ *Manu*, IX. 94.

5. इयता कालेन यवीयसो कन्या वोद्ध्वा न उनरेतावद्वयस एव विवाह इत्युपदे-  
शार्थः । अथापि न यथाश्रुतवर्षसङ्क्षेपे कि तर्हि वहुना कालेन यवीयसी वोद्ध्वा ।  
*Medhātithi*. पृष्ठ ४ योग्यकालप्रदर्शनपरं न तु नियमार्थं प्रायेणैतावता कालेन गृहीतवेदो  
अति । *Kullūka*.

Though Vātsyāyana in the rule quoted from Āpastamba Marriage prohibits the marriage of a *rākā* or a <sup>after</sup> *Puberty of phalini*<sup>1</sup>, that is, a girl who has reached <sup>Girls</sup> the age of puberty, yet many other passages in his book seem to show that he is speaking of virgins who have passed that age and were considerably advanced in youth; for example, he speaks of a wife just after marriage as *Vigādha-yauvand* or advanced in youth<sup>2</sup> and many passages in his chapter on courtship presuppose a virgin who is of sufficient age to respond to offers of love. The rule of Āpastamba quoted by Vātsyāyana also appears to suggest that the bride has passed the age of puberty<sup>3</sup>—and again the rule held in common by Baudhāyana and Vātsyāyana that the *gāndharva* was the best form of marriage<sup>4</sup>, seems to indicate that both the parties had passed the age of puberty. It is impossible to conceive of *Gāndharva* marriage before the couple could feel mutual love.

Marriage of a girl before puberty, also appears to have been equally, if not more prevalent, as is evidenced by Vātsyāyana's section on *Bālopakrama*, that <sup>before</sup> *Puberty* is, the courtship of a *bild* or a girl of tender years. Similarly in a passage that we have already referred to above, he contrasts a wife who is of tender years, with one of advanced youth.<sup>5</sup> This is also supported by the *Grhyasūtras* which speak of the

1 *KS.* p. 187 *sūtra* 12; *Āp.* *Gr.* *Sū.* I. 3. 11.

2 विगाद्यौवनायाः पूर्वस्तस्तुतायाः । *KS.* p. 193.

3 संगतयोऽिरात्रमधःशत्या ब्रह्मचर्यं ज्ञात्वा वर्जमाहारस्तथा सप्ताहं सत्तर्षमङ्गस्त्वान् प्रसावत् सहभोजनं च प्रेक्षासम्बन्धिताम् पूजनमिति साववणिकम् ।

*KS.* p. 191 *sūtra* 1; *Āp.* *Gr.* *Sū.* III. 8. 8.

4 See *ante.*, p. 15, foot-notes 1 and 2.

5 दीपालोके विगाद्यौवनायाः पूर्वस्तस्तुतायाः वालाया अपूर्वायाश्चान्वकरे ।

*KS.* p. 193.

marriage of a *nagnikī*, technically, a girl of ten years of age, as the most approved.<sup>1</sup>

The truth seems to be that marriage took place of both tender girls before puberty as well as of those

more advanced in years. In the earlier  
Marriage of both  
tender and aged  
Virgins in the  
Vedic age

Vedic times, including the Rgvedic age, both these forms of marriage seem to have been in vogue. While on the one hand, there

were virgins considerably advanced in years like *Ghoṣā*, there were others like *Romasā* for example, who were evidently married before puberty. In a hymn addressed to the *Asvins*, the father of *Ghoṣā*, *Kakṣīvat* who is supposed to have been the author, says, "You bestowed, *Asvins*, a husband upon *Ghoṣā* growing old, and tarrying in her father's dwelling".<sup>2</sup> *Ghoṣā* in a hymn of her own also says addressing the *Asvins*, "You *Nāsatyas*, are the good fortune of a damsel growing old in (her father's) mansion"<sup>3</sup> and the *Bṛhaddēvata* adds that "in the days of old she remained in her father's house for sixty years, when she in two hymns<sup>4</sup> praised the *Asvins* who gave her a husband."<sup>5</sup> *Romasā* was jeered at by her husband, the king *Bhāvayavya* for her immaturity in years.<sup>6</sup> The

1 समानवर्णमसमानप्रवर्त्तयोर्योथर्सीं नप्तिकां श्रेष्ठाम् । *Mānava Gr. Sū.*, I. 7. 8.  
Edn. by Knauer, p. 9.

2 युवं नरा स्तुते कृष्णयाय विष्णापवं ददृथुर्विश्वकाय । धोषायै चित्रं पितृष्ठदे  
दुरोग्यो पर्ति जूयं त्या अभ्यन्वावदत्तम् ॥ *RV.* I. 117. 7. *Trans.* Wilson, I. 315.

3 अस्माजुरश्चिद्वयो युवं भगोऽनाशोश्चिदविक्षितारापमस्य चित्रं । अल्पस्य विज्ञा-  
सत्या कृष्णस्य चिद्युधाभिदाहुर्भिजजा लक्षणस्य चित्रं ॥ *RV.* X. 30, 3. *Trans.* Wilson, vi.  
104.

4 *RV.* X. 31 and 40.

5 आसीत् काक्षवती धोषा पापरोगेन दुर्भगा । उवास वर्णि वर्णिणि पितृरेव गृहे पुरा ॥  
चिन्तयन्तीति सूक्ते द्वे यो वां परि ददर्य सा । भर्तां ददतुस्तस्यै दहस्त्यं च सुतं मुनिम् ॥  
*Bṛhaddēvata*, vii. 41, 46 and 47. Mac Donell's *Trans.* pp. 262-263.

6 *RV.* I. 126, 7 and *Bṛhaddēvata*. III. 156.

story of Uśasti Cākrāyana who lived in a village with his child-wife when there was a great famine, is also well-known.<sup>1</sup> Girls that were given away at the *svayamvara* must have reached youth. Sāvitri is spoken of as *Yauvanasthā* at the time of marriage and Damayantī as *Prāptyaauvanā*. Yaśodharā is said to have been born on the same day as Prince Siddhārtha.<sup>2</sup>

V. says a  
marriageable  
Virgin may  
be बाला  
युवती or  
प्रापुद्धा

Vātsyāyana sums up the whole thing in a verse in his section on courtship where he says that a maiden of tender years should be won over with the help of childlike sports and playthings, a damsel come of age by skill in the arts, and a spinster of more advanced years—*vatsalā*—with the help of persons in whom she confides.<sup>4</sup>

Varāṇa—  
Choice of  
the Bride

We may now pass on to Vātsyāyana's description of *Varāṇa* or choice of the bride. The selection was generally made and the marriage settled by the parents and other relatives and friends, and not by the parties to the marriage themselves, unless under exceptional circumstances. In the Vedic age too, the *Varāṇa* or the wooer was often a friend

1. मटचीहतेषु कुरुष्वाटिक्या सह भार्ययोषस्तिर्ह चाकाक्या इन्यग्रामे प्रदायाक खाल ।

*Chvindaya Up.* I. 10, L.

2. सा विग्रहवतीव श्रीर्घ्यवर्द्धत वृपात्मजा । कालेन चापि सा कन्या यौवनस्था वभूव ह ॥ यौवनस्थां तु तां दृष्टुं स्वां सुतां देवरूपिणीम् । अयात्ममानान्त्र वरं नृपतिर्हःस्तिर्हो भवत ॥ क्वगताभृत् सुतेय ते कुतश्चैवागता नृप । किमर्थं युपर्तीं भन्ते न चंद्रां सम्प्रयद्धसि ॥ *Mbt.* III. 262, 25; 31, 4. स समीक्ष्य मृणीपालः स्वां सुतां प्राप्तां विनाम् । अपश्यदात्मना कार्यं दमयन्त्याः स्वरवरम् । *Mbt.* III. 54, 8.

3. यस्मि पन समये अद्वाकं वोधिसत्त्वे लुभ्विनिवने जातां सर्वस्मि नेत्र समये राहुलमाता देवी... च जाता । *Introduction to the Pali Jātakas in Pauselli's Jātaka*, Vol. 1, p. 54.

4. चाक्रीडनवैर्बासा कलाभिर्यौवने स्थिता । वत्सला चापि संप्राद्या विश्वास्यजन-संप्रहात ॥ *KS.* p. 207.

of the bridegroom. We are told in a hymn of the *Rgveda* that when the god Soma was desirous of getting a bride, the two Aśvins became his *varas* or wooers, and presented the suit before *savitr*, the father of the bride,<sup>1</sup> and we are assured by another verse in the same hymn that when the Aśvins went in their three-wheeled car, soliciting the marriage of Sūryā, all the Gods signified their assent.<sup>2</sup> The *Gṛhya-Sūtras* also prescribe that *Varas* or wooers are to be sent for selecting the girl.<sup>3</sup>

Vātsyāyana says, that for the selection of the girl, the father, mother and relatives of the young man should stir themselves and besides, mutual friends of the two parties should carry on messages between them.<sup>4</sup> Vātsyāyana gives the advice that those charged with the *varaya* should

Propitiation of Bride's Parents exaggerate the defects present and prospective, of other suitors and should expatiate on the qualifications of their *Nāyaka*, both personal and hereditary, as well as such qualities as are likely to further their object; besides, they should enlarge upon such advantages possessed by him at the time, or likely to accrue to him in subsequent years, as would commend themselves to the girl's mother.<sup>5</sup> The advantage of winning the favour of the girl's mother<sup>6</sup> is emphasised upon and clever tricks also are recommended by Vātsyāyana for assuring success in the endeavour. Some of the friends of the youngman should drive the mother wild

1 सोमो बध्युरभवश्चिनास्तासुभा वरा । सूर्यां यत्पत्ये शसंर्ती मनसा सविताद्यात् ॥ *Rv.* x. 65. 9.

2 यदश्विना पृच्छसानावयात् विचक्षेण वहतुं सूर्यायाः । विश्वे देवा अतु सद्वामजान्मुत्रः पितराववृशीति ५८ा ॥ *Rv.* X. 85. 14.

3 वरान् प्रहित्यात् । *Ap.* *Gṛ.* 1. 4. 1, *Sākh.* *Gṛ.* 1. 6. 1 ff. *Ās.* *Gṛ.* 1. 5.

4 तस्या वरणे भातापितरा संबन्धिनश्च प्रयत्नेन् मित्राणि च गृहीतवाक्यान्मुभयसंबद्धानि । *KS.* p. 185.

5 तान्यन्देयां वरयत् शां दोषान् प्रत्यक्षानागमिकांश्च श्रावयेयुः । कौलान् पौरुषेयान् भिप्राप्तवर्धकांश्च नायकगुहान् विशेषतश्च कन्यामातुरनुकूलांस्तदात्यायतियुक्तान्दर्शयेयुः ।

*KS.* pp. 185-186.

6 विशेषतश्च कन्यामातुरनुकूलान्; *KS.* pp. 186-186.

by enumerating to her his chances of winning girls from other desirable parties.<sup>1</sup> One of the youngman's friends, again, may get himself up as an astrologer and give an account of the wealth and prosperity that would come to the *Nāyaka* in after years as promised by omens and portents, by the position of the planets and also by marks on his body.<sup>2</sup>

Vātsyāyana, though he speaks above of sham astrologers yet gives it as his decided opinion that a girl should be sought for, and also given away, when signs and omens, and portents and voices (*upāsruti*), are favourable<sup>3</sup>, and to support himself, he also quotes the earlier authority of Ghoṭakamukha, who says that marriages should not be contracted on human choice alone<sup>4</sup>, that is, *daiva* or superhuman tests should be applied by both the parties, in order to be satisfied that happiness and prosperity would result from the match. We must remember that the age of Vātsyāyana was the age of the growth and development of Indian astronomy which was hardly ever dissociated from astrology, when as a result of this alliance between science and pseudo-science grew up that large body of Siddhānta works culminating in the great books of Varāhamihira—the *Pañcasiddhāntikā*, the *Brhatsaṃhitā*, and the *Brhajātaka*.<sup>5</sup> Though faith

1 अपरे तु पुनरस्यान्यतो विशिष्टेन कन्यालाभेन कन्यामात्रसुन्मादेत्यः ।  
KS. p. 186.

2 दैवचिन्तकरूपश्च, शकुननिमित्तप्रहृष्टभवलालग्नादर्शेन नाथकस्य भविष्यन्तमधं-  
संगोगं कल्याणमनुवर्णयेत् ॥ KS. p. 185.

3 दैवनिमित्ताशकुनोपश्रुतो नामानुसोभेन कन्यां वरयेह्याच्च । KS. p. 185.

4 न यद्वद्या केवलमानुष्येति घोटकसुखः । KS. p. 187.

5 See Thibaut, *Astronomie, Astrologie und Mathematik*, no. 4 and 20.

in extra-human tests in marriage had been in favour since the time of the *Grhyasūtras* as the *Mānava Grhyasūtra*, the *Kausikasūtra* and the others testify,<sup>1</sup> yet they seem to have been more popular than ever before in the age of Vātsyāyana who presses into service even *uparūtis*—supernatural oracular voices heard as a result of mystic invocations of Gods or sometimes miraculous utterances heard specially at night, as the Commentary explains<sup>2</sup>.

The signs observed at the time of *varaya*, that is, when the bridegroom's party went to the parents of the

Signs and Omens at the time of Varaya girl to formally present their suit, were considered as very important factors in the

final choice and hence Vātsyāyana quotes from Āpastamba the rule that at the time of *varaya*, a girl who is found sleeping or weeping or has gone out of the house should be given up,<sup>3</sup> these being considered as inauspicious portents; then follow rules about the name borne by the girl and similar other things that we have already referred to before<sup>4</sup>. However, many of these defects are insignificant, artificial or accidental and Vātsyāyana was too astute an observer of the world to be led merely by such meaningless portents, and he at last quotes a simple rule, as we have seen before,<sup>5</sup> from the same legal authority, that happiness and prosperity attend the choice of a girl in whom the heart and the eyes are pleased and none other should be favoured. To capture the heart and the eyes of the wooers therefore, Vātsyāyana

1 *Mānava Gr. Sū.* Edn. by Knauer, p. 6.

2 निशोये चोपश्च तिग्रीष्मा । *KS.* p. 187.

3 सुसं रुदतीं निष्कान्तां वरणे परिवर्जयेत् । *KS.* p. 17. *Sūtra 11. 1. Ap. Gr. Sū. 1. 8, 10.*

4 See ante, pp. 121-2.

5 See ante, p. 123.

prescribes that the parents and relatives of a marriageable girl would be best advised to show her off in beautiful dress and ornaments and that thus got up, she should sport with her playmates every afternoon, and attend all festive gatherings<sup>1</sup>.

He next proceeds to give an account of the way in which the girl's parents and relatives are to receive the <sup>Reception of</sup> <sub>the Suitor</sub> suitors. He thus goes on : "When men fair to look on, courteous in speech, and accompanied by their connexions, come to propose marriage, the parent of the girl should receive them hospitably, and on same pretext or other show the girl in all her ornaments. They should come to no decision as to giving the girl before they have consulted the oracles. The wooer's party will be asked to bathe and take their meal and so forth. They should say, 'All that will come later.' They 'should not that day accept such attentions'.<sup>2</sup> The *varaya* is to fructify, says Vātsyāyana, in one of the four approved forms of marriage, *viz.*, *Brāhma*, *Prājāpatya*, *Ārṣa* or *Daiva*, or according to the forms in vogue in one's own country.<sup>3</sup>

It would be seen that this ceremony of *varaya* is not exactly courtship as Peterson takes it to be, because, here <sup>Varaya is not</sup> <sub>Courtship</sub> the actual parties to the marriage have very little to do. They have no choice to exercise, the whole matter is settled by the parents and relatives, including the selection of the bride. Personal courtship by the young people themselves has a secondary importance only with Vātsyāyana; it was to be resorted to when other means failed. Hence he does not describe courtship first and marriage afterwards, but he

1 See *ante*, p. 128.

2 Trans. by Peterson, *J B B R A S*, XVIII, pp. 115 and 117. *KS*, p. 180.

3 देशप्रवृत्तिसात्म्याद्वा ब्राह्मप्राजापन्नार्षदैवानामन्यतमेन विवाहेन शास्त्रतः परि शयेदिति । *KS*, p. 189.

first of all deals with the acquisition of a wife in the method approved of by society and by ancient tradition as contained in the sacred literature, and when this fails, a man may try to win over a girl by honest courtship, and even that failing, he may use tricks and even violence to secure his end. A girl also, under certain circumstances, though rather rare, may according to Vātsyāyana, take up the task of getting her husband in her own hands as we shall presently see.

A young man is to give up the idea of preferring his suit (*varana*) in the approved method and think of winning the affections of a girl by his own personal exertions when he finds himself placed under certain unfavourable circumstances : thus, he may be poor though otherwise fully qualified as a suitor ; or when possessed of mediocre qualifications (*madhyastha-guṇa*), he may be of rather mean birth ; or though rich, he may be a neighbour and therefore would not be liked on account of his high pretensions, or he may be disliked because of the possibility of quarrels springing up over boundaries etc., as the Commentary observes ;<sup>1</sup> or though possessing parents and brothers, he may be dependent on others ; or he may be considered a mere boy ;—in all such cases when he cannot hope for a favourable response to his suit, he should try to gain the love and esteem of the girl on whom his heart is set from her childhood.<sup>2</sup>

Vātsyāyana gives an example here from the people

1 एवगृहसमीपवासी सीमासम्बन्धेन कलहादिजलकर्त्तवात् । K.S. p. 200.

2 धनहीनस्तु गुणयुक्तोऽपि, मध्यस्थगुणो हीनापदेशो वा, सभनो वा प्रातिवेश्यो, मातापिताभावात् च परतन्त्रा, बालहृत्तिविचितप्रवेशो वा कन्यामलभ्यत्वात् वरयेत् । वास्थात् प्रभृति चैवां स्वयमेवानुरक्षयेत् । K.S. p. 200.

of the south : thus, for example, says he, in the Dakṣiṇāpāṭha, one separated from one's mother when a child, and living in a subordinate position in the family of his maternal uncle, should try to gain over the daughter of the uncle when beyond his reach on account of her wealth, ever if she may have been provisionally betrothed to another.<sup>1</sup> He may attempt to win over other girls also from childhood, for Ghōṭakamukha, who is Vātsyāyana's great authority for all matters appertaining to nuptials, declares that this courtship from childhood is unexceptionable as union is brought about by honest and honourable means (*dharma*).<sup>2</sup> Here Vātsyāyana confirms what Baudhāyana says about the irregular practice of the people of the south, that they marry the daughter of a maternal uncle.<sup>3</sup> Kumārila Bhaṭṭa also casts a fling at the Dakṣiṇātya who, he says, is overjoyed to get the daughter of his maternal uncle.<sup>4</sup> "The marriages between cousins," as Bühler points out, "occur among the Karhāḍa Brāhmaṇas of the Dekhan."<sup>5</sup> The existence of this custom in high circles in the South,

receives historical confirmation from the inscriptions of the powerful royal house of the Rāṣṭrakūṭa sovereigns of Malkhed. Thus the Rāṣṭrakūṭa monarch Kṛṣṇa II, who reigned during the last part of the ninth

1 तथायुक्तम् मातुलकुलानुवर्ती दक्षिणापये वाल पूर्व मात्रा च विषुक्तः परिभूत-  
कर्त्तो धनोत्त्रकर्णदलभ्यां मातुलकुहितरमन्यस्मै वा पूर्वदत्तां साधयेत् । *KS*, p. 200.

2 अन्यामपि वालां स्मृहयेद् वालायामेव सति धर्माधिगमे संवर्कनं लक्षाध्यमिति  
घोटकमुखः । *KS*, p. 200.

3 पूर्ववा विप्रतिपत्तिर्दक्षिणातस्तयोत्तरः । वालि दक्षिणातस्तानि व्याल्यास्त्वामः  
...मातुलपितृवस्तुहितृगमनमिति । *Baud. Dh. Śāst.* 1, 1, 2, 1-3. Edn. by Hultzsch, p. 2.

4 स्वमातुलदत्तां प्राप्य दक्षिणात्यक्ष्यु तुष्यति । Kumārila Bhaṭṭa, quoted by Govindaśāvālin in his Commentary on the *Baud. Dh. Śāst.* Mysore edn. p. 8.

5 *SBE*, vol XIV, p. 146.

and the beginning of the tenth century, had as his *mahādevī* or chief queen, a daughter of the Haihaya Cedi king Kokkalla, and from them was born Jagattuṅga II who married Lakṣmī, the daughter of his maternal uncle Raṇavighraha, a son of Kokkalla. From this union sprang up Indra III, who again married Vijāmbā, the daughter of Ammanadeva, who himself was the son of Arjuna, another son of Kokkalla.<sup>1</sup>

Vātsyāyana gives detailed instructions about the methods of courtship, varying according to age. A mere girl (*bālā*) is to be wooed by sharing in her child-like sports and occupations, a damsel who is come of age (*yauvanasthītā*), by an exhibition of skill in the arts or *kalās*, and a woman more advanced in years is to be courted through the help of those in whom she places her confidence.<sup>2</sup> Thus the young swain is advised to collect flowers and make garlands in company with the maiden whose heart he wishes to win and to carry on with her games befitting their age or the degree of familiarity between them, or only such as are agreeable to her disposition.<sup>3</sup> He should form the acquaintance of and propitiate her female friends, specially the daughter of her nurse, by little acts of kindness and service—as she would be very helpful in his quest.<sup>4</sup> The man should get for the girl things that she takes a fancy to.<sup>5</sup> Vātsyāyana then gives a fairly

1 Cambay Plates of Govindarāja I V. verses 14-20, *Ep. Ind.* vii, p. 38.

2 See ante, p. 127.

3 तथा सह उप्पावचयं प्रथमं गृहकं दुहितृकाक्रीडायोजनं भक्तपाककरणमिति कुर्वति परिच्यस्य घयसक्षानुरूप्यात् । *KS.* p. 201.

4 धात्रेयिकां चास्याः प्रियहितास्यामधिकसुपग्नीयात्, सा हि प्रीयमाणा विविताकाराऽप्यप्रत्यादिष्टन्ती तं तां च योजयितुं शक्तुशाद्वनभिहिताऽपि प्रत्याचार्यकम् । *KS.* p. 202.

5 क्रीडनकद्वयानि यान्यपूर्वाणि यान्यन्यासां विरलश्चो विद्ये रस्तान्यस्या अपल्लेन संपादयेत् । *KS.* p. 202.

long list of presents that would be prized by her especially such as would show her off on days of public and private festivities.<sup>1</sup> When he has won the confidence to some extent then he may amuse her by relating agreeable stories or entertain her with music<sup>2</sup>. He himself must always be faultlessly dressed and never be offensive to sight, because, Vātsyāyana argues, when maidens reach youth they get to love men whom they frequently see<sup>3</sup>. He should now carefully take note of her movements and see if he can detect any signs of growing partiality for him.<sup>4</sup>

Vātsyāyana here enumerates the outward signs and actions by which a budding affection may be discovered, such as, she cannot look the man in the face, casts side-long glances at him and so on, all of which are quite true to nature.<sup>5</sup> When the outward signs and movements leave no doubt about her love, he should grow less timid gradually, take greater and greater liberties with her without giving any offence<sup>6</sup> and try to gain her over entirely by means of various tricks and devices that recommend themselves to young lovers in every clime. Vātsyāyana takes pains to describe them at some length and at last he again quotes Ghotakamukha to warn the young swain that he must be quick to read the signs that betray her passion, because even when love is far advanced success

1 KS. pp. 202-203.

2 वर्धमानानुरागां वारङ्ग्यानके मनः कुर्वतोमन्तर्थाभिः कथाभिःश्चित्तारियीभिः रुचयेत् । KS. p. 203.

3 उदारतेष्व व्ययमनुपृष्ठदर्शनक्षम्यात् । युवत्यो हि संसुष्टमभीक्षावर्षीम् च पुरुषं प्रथमं कामयन्ते । KS. p. 203.

4 भावे च कुर्वतीभिःश्चित्ताकारैः सूचयेत् । KS. p. 203.

5 संसुखं न वीक्षते, तं तु कीक्षिता त्रीडं कर्मयति । etc. etc. KS. p. 206.

6 इशितेभिःश्चित्ताकारां कन्यामुपायतोऽभियुज्जीत । KS. p. 208

cannot be achieved with maidens by sloth and despondence and he can never expect a damsel to confess her love.<sup>1</sup>

Placed in unfavourable circumstances similar to those from which a young man suffers, a maiden may also have to look for a husband herself and Vāt-  
A maiden has sometimes to look for a Husband syāyana takes her case also in hand. When a girl though possessed of excellent qualities, is born in a humble family, or even when well-born, is destitute of wealth and is therefore not sought after by her equals, or has been deprived of her parents and is dependent upon her relatives and if she has come of age (*prāpta-yauvanā*), then she should stir herself to arrange her marriage herself.<sup>2</sup> Here we are reminded of the rule advocated by Manu himself and supported by other sacred books including the *Mahābhārata*, that a damsel should wait three years after reaching puberty, and after that period she may choose for herself a husband befitting her.<sup>3</sup> Such a maiden should try to gain over a young man of ability possessed of virtues, and of a handsome look, whose affections she had shared in childhood; or, when she feels assured that a man owing to his passion for her would not hesitate to unite with her even against the consent of his parents, then she may win him over by endearing herself to him and by meeting him

1 अन्याभिरपि सह विश्वासनार्थमधिकमधिक धाभिषुक्षीत न तु वाचा निवदत्तु । दूरगतभावोऽपि हि कन्याद्य न निवदेन सिध्यतीति शोदकस्तुः । *KS.* pp. 211-212.॥

2 मन्दापदेशा गुणवत्यपि कन्या धनहीना कुलीनापि समानैश्याच्यमाना । मातापितृ-वियुक्ता वा ज्ञातिकुलवर्तिनी वा प्राप्त्यौवना पाणिग्रहणं स्वयमसभीप्सेत । *KS.* p. 218.

3 त्रीणि वर्णाण्युदीजेत कुमार्युत्तमती सती । ऊदुन्तु कालादेतस्माद्विन्देत सहर्षं पतिम् ॥ *Manu.* ix. 90. त्रीणि वर्णाण्युदीजेत कन्या अतुमती सती । चतुर्थेत्वं सम्प्राप्ते स्वयं भर्तारमजयेत । *Mht.* XIII. 44, 16.

often.<sup>1</sup> She may show her skill in the arts, and various other devices<sup>2</sup> are recommended by Vātsyāyana, who, however, warns a girl against presenting her suit to a man herself, even when she is deeply in love with him, because such conduct brings ruin unto a damsel, so declare the teachers (*Acāryas*) of the *Kāmasāstra*.<sup>3</sup> In another connection also he forbids a man to have anything to do with a woman who herself makes overtures of love openly<sup>4</sup>. Vātsyāyana also tries to press upon a girl the sage advice that in choosing a husband, she should look for love and not money; "It is better," says he, 'to love a husband who is devoted to her though poor, than a rich man, or one endowed with many virtues, when his affections she would have to share with others'.<sup>5</sup> When there are several eligible suitors of equal quality, the real suitor is he with whom there is a mutual reciprocation of love<sup>6</sup>.

Vātsyāyana next proceeds to describe the forms of marriage that would cement the union brought about by courtship between the parties themselves, without the permission of the parents or relatives, and the details furnished by Vātsyāyana are interesting as illustrating the definitions given in the *Grhyasūtras* and the *Dharmasūtras*. After

Forms of Marriage:  
resulting from  
Courtship

1 सा तु गुणवन्तं गर्कं सुदृश्यन् बालप्रीत्याभियोजयेत् । ये वा मन्येत माता-पित्रोरसभीक्षया स्वयमव्ययमिन्द्रियदैवलयान्मयि प्रवर्तित्यत इति प्रियहितोपचारैरसभीक्षण-सन्दर्शनेन च तमावज्येत् । *KS*, p. 214.

2 कर्त्ता कौशलप्रकाशने वा .. । *KS*, p. 214.

3 न चैवातुराऽपि पुरुषं स्वयमभियुक्तजीत, स्वयमभियोगिनी हि युवतिः सौभार्य जहातोत्याचार्याः । *KS*, p. 215.

4 प्रकाशप्रार्थिनी (अगम्या) *KS*, p. 67.

5 वरं वस्त्रो ददिदोऽपि निरुणोऽप्यात्मधारणः । गुणोरुक्तोऽपि च त्वेव वहु-साधारणः पतिः ॥ *KS*, p. 217.

6 गुणसाम्बेदभियोक्तृयामेको वरयिता वरः । तत्राभियोक्तरि श्रैष्ठःमनुरागात्मको हि सः ॥ *KS*, p. 217.

perfect unity of sentiment is established between the parties and all the scruples of the maiden overruled by persuasions, the time and place of meeting should be

arranged with the help of friends. When  
Gāndharva  
Marriage the girl has been brought to a secret place,

sacred fire should be brought from the house of a *Śrotriya* Brahmin who maintains a perpetual fire for the performance of his daily sacrificial rites, *kuśa* grass should be spread before it upon the earth, oblations offered in the fire in accordance with the prescriptions of the sacred law (*smṛti*), and then they should thrice go round the fire, and after this is completed, the parents of the girl should be informed<sup>1</sup>; "A marriage performed before fire as witness to the transaction, can never be set aside, this is the rule approved by all teachers" (*ācārya-samaya*), says Vātsyāyana<sup>2</sup>. By and by the relatives on both sides should be informed and be persuaded to confirm the marriage by bestowing the girl upon her lover in the formal way, by representing to them that otherwise the king might punish the bridegroom's side for the violence, and on the other side, the fair name of the girl's family may be tarnished, and then both sides may be reconciled by an exchange of presents. This is the Gāndharva form of marriage<sup>3</sup>.

Vātsyāyana considers several other cases also : if the girl cannot make up her mind, then the man should, with the help of another lady of good family, have the maiden brought to a secret place on some pretext, and

1 प्रतिपक्षामभिप्रेतावकाशवर्तिनीं नायक् शोश्रिवागारादस्मिमानाद्य कुशानास्तीर्थ पथास्मृति दुत्ता च त्रिः परिक्षेत् । ततो भातरि पितरि च प्रकाशयेत् । *KS.* pp. 219.-220.

2 अस्मिसाक्षिका हि विवाहा न निवर्तन्त इत्याचार्यसमयः । *KS.* p. 220.

3 *KS.* p. 220. Thus explains the Commentary. But the text has गान्धर्वेन विवा हैन वा वेष्टेत which seems to show that *Gāndharva* was an alternative form of marriage. However, M.M. Durgaprasad's edition (p. 220) gives a variant where "ea" is read in the passage in place of "eñ".

have the rites performed as before<sup>1</sup>. When the marriage of the girl has been settled with some other person and the date of the nuptial ceremony draws near, then he should by all means turn her mother against the match, by having recounted to her the faults and defects of the prospective bridegroom, and with her consent have the girl brought to a neighbour's house and get the nuptials celebrated; or he may place the brother of the girl under great obligation to himself, and with his help get the girl brought to a secret place and married to him as described above<sup>2</sup>. All these are supposed to represent the *Gāndhārva* form of marriage.

Then *Vātsyāyana* gives two illustrations of the *Paisāca* form. At public festivities the man may *Paisāca* *Marriage* make the daughter of her nurse administer to the girl some intoxicating substance and then have her brought to a secret place when she is senseless under the drug. Afterwards he would inform her relatives of it and persuade them to bestow her on him, or he may do the like when she is asleep<sup>3</sup>.

Last of all he describes the *Rāksasa* form. Coming to know beforehand that the girl would be going on a journey to another village, or to the gardens, the man may lie in ambush *Rāksasa* *Marriage by Capture* with a sufficient number of friends, then frighten away or kill her guards and forcibly carry her off<sup>4</sup>.

1 आप्रतिपथमानायामन्तश्चरिणीमन्यां कुलप्रमदां पूर्वसंस्कृतीं प्रीयमाणां दोषगृह्ण तथा सह विश्वमवकाशमेनाभन्यकार्योपदेशेनाययेत् । ततः श्रोत्रियागारादश्मिमिति समानं पूर्वोयं । *KS.* p. 220.

2 आसज्जोच विवाहे मात्रमस्त्रास्त्रभिमतान्यवरदोपैतुश्चर्यं याहयेत् । ततस्तत्वात् मतेन प्रातिवेश्याभवेन निश्च नायकमायाद्य श्रोत्रियागारादश्मिमिति समानं पूर्वोयं । *KS.* p. 221.

3 अष्टमीचन्द्रकादिषु धात्रेयिका मदनीयमेनां पायथित्वा किञ्चिदात्मनः कार्यमुहिष्य नायकस्य विषद्य देशमानयेत् । तत्रैवां मदात्मसंज्ञामप्रतिपथमानां दूषयित्वेति समानं पूर्वोयं । स्त्रां चैकचारिणीं धात्रेयिकां वारयित्वा संज्ञामप्रतिपथमानां दूषयित्वेति समानं पूर्वोयं । *KS.* p. 221-222.

4 ग्रामान्तरमुद्यानं वा गच्छन्तीं विदित्वा दुसंवृत्तसहायो नायकस्तदा रक्षिष्यो विचास्थ इत्वा वा कन्यामपहरेदिति विवाहयोगाः । *KS.* p. 222,

In all these marriages celebrated without the consent of the parents, Vātsyāyana advises, as we have seen, that particular care should be taken to have some nuptial ceremonies performed in secret marriages must be confirmed before fire sacred fire, so that they may not run the risk of being cancelled. This is to provide against the contingency of the girl's parents overlooking the secret union and bestowing her upon another man, such as is authorised by Baudhāyana and Vasiṣṭha, both of whom prescribe that if a girl has been abducted by force, but the due nuptial rites have not been performed with the recitation of the sacred texts (*mantras*), then she may be lawfully given away with the proper rites, to another person, she is as good as a virgin<sup>1</sup>. Even when the parents agree, it will be necessary to have the marriage ratified, by a formal performance of the rites. Devala declares that in the forms of marriage beginning with the Gāndharva, that is, in the *Gāndharva*, *Paiśicā* and *Rākṣasa* forms, the rites should again be performed by the three higher castes in the regular method, before the fire as witness<sup>2</sup>. There is a difference of opinion among law-givers as to whether this second performance of the nuptial rites is in order, Manu declaring against it, as in such cases the girls are no longer virgins<sup>3</sup>.

Vātsyāyana has mentioned before<sup>4</sup> four forms of marriage, approved in genteel society, in the order Brāhma, Prājāpata, Arṣa and Daiva,

1 वसाचेत् प्रहता कन्या मन्त्रैर्दिति न संस्कृता । अन्यस्मै विविवदेया यथा कन्या संवैच सा ॥ Baudh. Dh. Sāst. I V. 1, 15; Vasiṣṭha, xvii. 73.

2 गान्धर्वेणु विवाहेणु पुनर्बैवाहिको विधिः । ३ कर्तव्यस्त्र त्रिभिर्वर्णैः समयेनापि साक्षिकः ॥ Devala, quoted by Kullūkabhaṭṭa on Manu, viii. 226.

3 पाणिपहणिका मन्त्राः कन्यास्त्वेव प्रतिष्ठिताः ।  
नाकन्याष्ट कचिद् शां लुप्तम् किंवा हि सा ॥

Manu, viii. 226. See Buehler, SBE, xxv. p. 294.

4 See ante p. 381.

but he has not delineated their distinctive characteristics, taking it for granted perhaps that their connotations were all known to his readers, and he might very well do so, inasmuch as they were exhaustively dealt with in the *Gṛhyasūtras*, the *Dharmaśāstras*, the Great Epic and the *Purāṇas* and similar other literature. Now he describes the *Gāndharva*, *Paisāca* and *Rākṣasa* forms ; of these, the first he mentions by name, and of the last two forms, he only gives the description and leaves the names to be supplied by the reader. However, thus we see that he mentions altogether seven forms, leaving out the *Āsura* marriage in which "the bridegroom receives a maiden, after having given as much wealth as he can afford, to the kinsmen and the bride herself, according to his own will"<sup>1</sup>. It is rather striking that Vātsyāyana does not advise a young man to purchase his bride by money, though he does not shrink from recommending the adoption of meeker and more violent forms like the *Paisāca* and the *Rākṣasa*. Most probably, it was very much looked down upon in cultured society in his days. Yājñavalkya<sup>2</sup>, however, mentions the *Āsura* marriage along with the other seven. Now, applying Vātsyāyana's dictum that in his list of the seven forms, one that precedes is superior to one that follows, on account of its being more in accordance with *dharma* or the sacred law<sup>3</sup>, we arrive at a graded series which is not quite in agreement with the *Dharmaśāstras*. For instance, Manu gives the series thus—Brāhma, Daiva, Prājāpatya, Ārsa<sup>4</sup>. The other three he has not graded, but taking them

1 Manu, iii. 86. Buehler, SBE XXXV, p. 87.

2 Yāj. I, 61.

3 पूर्वः पूर्वः प्रधानं स्वाद्विवाहो धर्मस्थितेः । पुर्वमावे ततः कार्यो यो य उत्तरः । K.S. p. 222.

4 See *Manu*, iii, 87—88,

in the order in which he enumerates them, they are to be graded as *Āsura*, *Gāndharva*, *Rākṣasa* and *Paiśāca* the last of which he definitely characterises as the eighth and the worst<sup>1</sup>. Yājñavalkya also agrees with Manu with only the slight difference that he places the *Ārṣa* and the *Prājāpatya* in the same category<sup>2</sup>. Kauṭilya also mentions all the eight forms of marriage but what is remarkable, is that he, unlike Manu and others, enumerates the first four forms in exactly the same order as Vātsyāyana,<sup>3</sup> showing here a point of agreement with the latter, as in many other respects. Most of the authors of the law codes differ from Vātsyāyana in condemning the *Paiśāca* as the worst, worse than even the *Rākṣasa*, but the Commentator of Vātsyāyana explains the position of his author by saying that the *Paiśāca*, though not lawful (*adharma*), yet is better than the *Rākṣasa*, as the latter involves violence<sup>4</sup>.

Summing up the views of Vātsyāyana, it appears that he sanctions a great deal of freedom from ordinary rules and conventions with regard to marriage. We have seen that in the matter of the selection of a bride, he is ready to cast off to the wind all the innumerable checks and tests that hamper the free exercise of choice, non-essential, technical imperfections being never allowed to stand in the way when there is a union of hearts, not even when the consent of the parents is not available on either side. According to him, therefore, the *Gāndharya*

1. स पापिदो विवाहानो वैशाखशाष्टमोऽधमः । *Manu* iii. 34.

2. *Yāj.* i. 59—60.

3. *Arthashastra*, iii, 2.

4. वैशाचोऽधमोऽपि राहसात् प्रधानं राहस्यं साहसकर्मस्वात् । *KS.* 223.

form of marriage is the most respected (*pūjita*), because, he declares, love is the fruit of all the forms of marriage that can be conceived of, and love is more in evidence here than in any other forms where considerations of birth, money or other qualities are the deciding factors. It brings forth happiness, is not accompanied by all the troubles of a lengthy negotiation and ceremonial, and what is more important, is the result of mutual love<sup>1</sup>.

1 See ante, *verses* quoted in note 1, p. 15.

SOCIAL LIFE IN ANCIENT INDIA :  
AS DEPICTED IN VĀTSYĀYANA'S KĀMASŪTRA

III. LIFE OF THE NAGARAKA

Vātsyāyana in his work holds up the ideal of city-life. He wrote the Kāmasutra as a practical handbook for the guidance of city-bred men of fashion—the Nagarakas. A whole section of his book is called *Nagarakavṛttam*, wherein he describes the life of a city-man, not of a mere dweller in a city—such a person would only be a *nagara*,—but of a *nagaraka*, who, according to Pāṇini, is a city-bred man skilled in the arts and knaveries that specially develop in a big city, one possessing the virtues and vices of “a cockney” : he might be a clever artist or a knave, as the *Kāśikā-vṛitti* so naively explains.<sup>1</sup> Vātsyāyana’s book is calculated to benefit such men and women, among them princesses and daughters of high officials (*Mahāmātras*), who armed with an expert knowledge of the practical directions given by him, would be able to subdue the heart of a husband whose love is shared by a crowded harem of as many as a “thousand” wives.<sup>2</sup> Vātsyāyana recommends the city as the proper place of abode for a person who after finishing his education, thinks of entering the world, the *grhasthāśrama*, with the wealth that he may have acquired, either by inheritance or by the pursuit of the profession particularly appertaining to his own caste and

1. *Kāśikā-Vṛitti* on Pāṇini, vi. 2. 128—“नगरात् कुत्सनप्रावीशयोः” - नगरशब्दाद् दुश्चपूत्ययो भवति शैक्षिकः, कुत्सने प्रावीशये च गम्यमाने।...कुत्सने निन्दनम्। प्रावीशये नैरुपयम्। ‘केनाच्च मुचितः पन्था गात्रे पश्चालिवसरः?’ ‘इह नगरे मनुष्येण सम्भाव्यत एतज्ञागरकेण। चौरा हि नागरका भवन्ति।’ ‘केनेदं लिखितं चित्रं मनो-नेत्रं विकाश्य यत्?’—‘इह नगरे मनुष्येण सम्भाव्यत एतज्ञागरकेण। प्रावीशया हि नागरका भवन्ति।’

2. योगजा राजपुत्री च महामात्रसुता तथा। सहस्रान्तःपुरमपि स्ववशे कुरुते पतिम्॥—*KS.* p. 41 (*nūtra* 22).

his position in society; <sup>1</sup> such a man should adopt the life of a *nāgaraka* and fix his habitation in a city—whether small or big, a *nagara*, or a *pattana*, or a *kharvāṭa*, or at least in a resort of many good and noble persons.<sup>2</sup> In the age of Vātsyāyana, apparently everybody who was marked out from the rest by any pre-eminence in intelligence, or learning, or skill in the arts, was attracted to the city, and found his patron in the king, or in a wealthy *nāgaraka*, or found employment at the clubs and assemblies of citizens, or under the guilds of merchants and artisans.

If a person could not afford to live in a city and was forced to shut himself up in a village by the exigencies of earning his livelihood, even then he should, according to Vātsyāyana, look upon civic life as the ideal and by giving to his fellow villagers glowing descriptions of the pleasant life led by the *nāgaraka*, he should inspire those among his own class who show any special cleverness or curiosity, with a desire to imitate the conduct of the city-people and he should give them a taste of the amenities of city-life by starting clubs and social gatherings as in the city, by himself gratifying his friends with his company, by favouring them with his assistance and by introducing the spirit of mutual help and co-operation.<sup>3</sup> A village-wife is spoken of as a simpleton and village-women generally are spoken of as very light and fickle; such rustic women (*caranis*) are regarded with scant courtesy by Vātsyāyana.<sup>4</sup> The life of a round

1 गृहीतविद्यः प्रतिप्रह-ज्य-क्रय-निवैषां विद्यिते त्यैर्यन्वयागतैरुभयैर्वा गाहृस्यमधिगम्य नागरकवृत्ते वर्तते ।—Kāmaśūtra, p. 42 (sūtra 1).

2 नगरे पत्तने खर्वटे महति वा सज्जनाश्रये स्थानम् ।—ibid, p. 42 (sūtra 2).

3 ग्रामवासी च सज्जातान्विचक्षणान् कौतुहलिकान् प्रीत्साधा नः गरकजनस्य हृतं वण्यन् श्रद्धा च जनयस्तदेवानुकूलितं गोष्ठी च प्रवर्तयेत् सप्तस्या जनमनुरूपयेत् कम्मेष्व च साहाय्येन चानुगृहीयात् उपकारयेचेति नागरकवृत्तम् ।—ibid, p. 57 (sūtra 49).

4 योषितस्त्वमा अभियोगमात् नाध्या \* \* ग्राम्यभाषी—ibid, p. 234 (sūtra 52), ग्रामाधिन्तेरायस्त्वम् हस्तोल्यवृत्तिपुत्रस्य युनो ग्रामीणयोषितो वचनमातृसाध्या, तास्त्वयेत्य इत्याचक्षते विदा: ।...ibid, p. 282 (sūtra 5).

of pleasures in the city was naturally very expensive and many ran through their fortunes. Such a *nāgaraka* who had eaten up his fortune (*bhukta-ribhavaḥ*) might, however, if clever, earn a living by placing himself at the service of the clubs and pleasure-houses where he would be respected on account of his skill in the arts, and then he would be called a *vīṭa*.<sup>1</sup> Even if a man had no fortune of his own he might enjoy the pleasures of life as a *pīṭhamarīḍa*; he might acquire skill in the arts and go about as an itinerant professor of these at the clubs of citizens and the abodes of *gaṇikās*; such a man was marked by his peculiar seat (*mallikā*) which he hung on his back, by his dyed clothes and by some kind of soap (*phēṇaka*) which he always carried about in order to keep himself clean.<sup>2</sup> Or he might, if he was skilled in only a few of the arts, attach himself to a wealthy *nāgaraka* as his companion and confidential friend and then he was called a *vidūṣaka* or a *vaihāsika*, a professional jester.<sup>3</sup>

#### GROWTH OF CITIES IN ANCIENT INDIA

This strong desire for the gay life of the city shows that there must have been a pretty large number of cities at the time when Vātsyāyana's work was written. Cities had grown up in India from very ancient times. The village and its headman,—the *grāma* and

1. भुक्तिभवस्तु गुणवान् सकलत्रो वेशे गोष्यां च वद्युमतस्तदुपजीवी च विटः ।... *Ibid*, p. 56 (*sūtra* 45). We meet with this and the other characters here described, in Bhāva's *Cārudatta*. The *Vīṭa* there is a typical one: he has attached himself to a rich man in power, *Sākāra*, whom however he hates for his grossness, for he has still some noble and soft feelings left in himself; moreover, he speaks Sanskrit, showing that he has received a liberal education and has evidently known better days.

2. अविभवस्तु शरीरमात्रो महिकाफेलक्षण्यमात्रपरिच्छदः पूर्णाहृषादागतः कलाष चिच्छणस्तदुपदेशेन गोष्यां वेशोचिते च वृत्ते साधयेदात्मानमिति पोठमर्दः ।... *Ibid*, p. 55 (*sūtra* 44).

3. एकदेशविषयस्तु क्रीडनको विवास्थरच विदूषकः वैहासिको वा ।... *Ibid*, p. 55 (*sūtra* 48).

the *grāmāni*—are no doubt often met with in the *Rgveda*,<sup>1</sup> but the *grāma* sometimes grew into a *mahāgrāma* and people naturally crowded round the settlement of a powerful chieftain, round his *pur* or fortified habitation.<sup>2</sup> In later Vedic literature, cities were very well known; the *Mānava Grhyasūtra* mentions the *grāma*, the *nagara* and the *nigama*.<sup>3</sup> The cities were very well known to the compilers of the *Dharmasūtras*, Baudhāyana going so far as to warn people desirous of spiritual growth against residence in cities: he declares that it is hardly possible for a man who resides in a town—"whose body, whose face and eyes are defiled by the impure dust of a city"—to obtain success in his spiritual quest.<sup>4</sup> Pāṇini in the seventh century B.C. knew many towns, as we see from his *sūtras* and some of his *gānas*; even the *nagaraka*, the special product of city-life as we have pointed out, was known to him. Kauṭilya and Megasthenes show that there were some very big cities with elaborate arrangements for civic government and that municipal organisation of the city had developed wonderfully.<sup>5</sup> In the *Jīlakas* and the Buddhist Pali texts we find the description of large and prosperous cities which were seats of government and where trade flourished, where the *gahapati* was a prominent citizen and the *sresthi* took a leading part.<sup>6</sup> The *Milinda Pañho* gives a splendid description of

1 *R V.*, i. 44. 10, etc.; see also Macdonell and Keith, *Vedic Index*, vol. i, p. 244.

2 *Ibid.* pp. 245 and 538; *Jaiminiya Upaniṣad Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 13. 4.

3 अत ऊङ्गं प्रामचतुष्पथे नगरचतुष्पथे निगमचतुष्पथे वा...वलिमुपहरति ।...  
*Mānava Grhyasūtra*. (ed. by Dr. Fr. Knauer), ii. 14. 2. 8 (p. 56).

4 पुरेण्यकुण्डल-शशीरस्तपरिपूर्णं नेतृवदनश्च । नगरे वसन् धर्मियतात्मा सिद्धिम-  
वाप्स्यतीति न तदृस्ति ।—*Baudhāyana Dharmasūtra*, ii. 3. 53.

5 Vincent A. Smith, *Early History of India* (3rd ed.), pp. 120-29.

6 Rhys Davids, *Buddhist India*, pp. 34-41.

the town of Sākala,<sup>1</sup> and nearer Vātsyāyana's time, we find beautiful descriptions of splendid and prosperous towns given in the *Buddha-carita* and *Lalitavistara*.<sup>2</sup> In Vātsyāyana's time all over India there must have been a large number of cities, great and small, for India was then broken up into innumerable principalities and each prince had his own fortified capital. Besides, cities had grown up at places of pilgrimage—Brahmanic, Buddhist and Jain—or had sprung up as centres of the growing trade of the country. It was for the dwellers of these cities, where wealth accumulated and where the virtues and vices that wealth brings in its train specially developed, that Vātsyāyana wrote his great work.

### ECONOMIC PROSPERITY OF INDIA IN THE AGE OF VĀTSYĀYANA

At the time that Vātsyāyana wrote, India was carrying on an abundant trade, by land and by sea with China on the one hand and the Roman orient on the other. According to a Chinese book *Funantu-suh-tokuau* written in the third century A.C., Kuntien or Kaundinya founded an Indian Colony in Indo-China about B.C. 58, and it soon grew up into a great centre of foreign trade in that quarter. By way of this Brahmanic colony planted in Indo-China, the Indians carried on an ever-increasing maritime trade with China in the approved Chinese method of sending so-called embassies and making an exchange of presents. We read again and again in the Chinese annals of numerous Indian envoys who presented tribute by way of *Jihnan* (modern Annam and Tonquin).<sup>3</sup> With Asia

1 *The Questions of King Milinda*, S. B. E., xxxv, pp. 2-3.

2 *Buddha-carita*, chaps. i and x; *Lalitavistara*, chap. iii.

3 T. de Lacouperie, *Western Origin of the Chinese Civilisation*, pp. 240-42; see also the *Dawn Magazine*, 1910, Part I, p. 98 and 1911, Part I, pp. 22-28.

Minor and the near West, India had been intimately connected for a long time as we see from Asoka's inscriptions; and the settlement of the Kushans as a great Indian ruling power in the north-western marches of the country, led to the opening out of trade-routes to the east and the west, and it placed India in a position of vantage with regard to the trade with the civilised world, with the dominions of the "Son of Heaven" on the one hand and the empire of the Cæsars on the other. When in the second century A.C., not very long before Vātsyāyana, a great Kushan emperor adopted the magnificent title of *Mahārāja-Rājatirāja-Devaputra-Kaisara Kaniṣka*—"The great King, the King of Kings the Son of Heaven, the Cæsar Kaniṣka", we see that in him there was a fusion of the three great civilisations of the time—the Indian, the Chinese and the Roman.<sup>1</sup> The currency of the Kushans shows an equally international character and seems to be designed to facilitate the trade of these dominions with the rest of the world; the coins show a strange and wonderful combination of Greek, Zoroastrian and Indian designs and icons; some of them have Jupiter on one side and Buddha on the other; they have legends in Greek, Iranian or Indian vernaculars and in varied scripts, Greek, Brāhmī or Kharoṣṭhī. There cannot be any doubt that these coins were intended for currency inside as well as outside and they afforded facility of exchange to the Indian merchants trading with the near West. Vātsyāyana also knew coins of copper, silver and gold. He speaks of a *kūrṣipāṇa* of small value and of the *nigka* or coin of gold; besides, he refers to the art of examining *rūpyas* or coins as one of the sixty-four *kālás*. Moreover, he uses the word *hiranya* to mean

1. *Epigraphia Indiae*, xiv, p. 148.

money in general including perhaps, gold and silver coins.<sup>1</sup>

Pliny in the first century A.C. and Ptolemy in the second, testify to the great trade that India had with the Roman empire.<sup>2</sup> In the third century when Vātsyāyana lived, this trade must have gone on increasing and we shall not be far mistaken to conjecture that the Brahmanic colonies, that Fa Hien visited in Java, went out about this period. The prosperity that this extensive commerce with the civilised world conferred on India, is fully reflected in the life of the *nāgaraka*, everything about whom, house and furniture, dress and ornaments, sports and pastimes, charity and liberality, bespeak an unstinted expenditure of wealth.

The literature of the period to which Vātsyāyana belongs, amply corroborates the description that he gives of society. But we shall have room only to quote an occasional passage here and there from the works of Bhāsa and from the *Lalitavistara* both of which are supposed to belong to the third century A.C. and, therefore, to have been written about the same time as the *Kāmasūtra*; we may also draw some illustrations from the works of Aśvaghoṣa who flourished about a century earlier and belongs virtually to the same epoch.<sup>3</sup>

1 See R. D. Banerji, *Prācīna-mudrā*, pp. 81-101, for an account of the Kushan coins. For Vātsyāyana's mention of coins cf. वरं सांश्यिकांचित्कावृसांश्यिकः कार्यपाणः—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 19 (*sūtra* 30); रुद्यरत्नपरीक्षा...p. 32; and सब्दकार्यपाणः तत्पूलत्वाद्विरग्यद् इति वात्स्यायनः...p. 387 (*sūtra* 6); *Jayamāṅgala* explains, हिरण्यमत्र सोकप्रतीत्या कर्पदकाः.

2 V. A. Smith, *Early History of India* (3rd ed.), pp. 438-44.

3 For the date of the *Lalitavistara* see Winternitz, *Geschichte der indischen Litteratur*, ii, p. 199. For Bhāsa, see D. R. Bhandarkar, *Lectures on the Ancient History of India* (1918), p. 59.

## THE HOUSE OF A NÂGARAKA

The house that the *nîgaraka* builds for his residence shows his taste and love of beauty and the simple but choice furniture and decorations that adorn his rooms show his love of art and his many-sided culture. As we have seen before, the *nîgaraka* builds his house in a city. It has to be in close proximity to a supply of water and is divided into two parts, the inner belonging to the ladies and the outer where, as we shall see presently, the master of the house attends to business and receives visitors. There is a number of rooms each set apart for its special purpose, and attached to the house there must be a *vrksavâdikî* or a garden with wide grounds, if possible, where flowering plants and fruit-trees can grow as well as kitchen vegetables.<sup>1</sup> In the middle of the ground should be excavated either a well, or if there is room enough, a tank or a lake.<sup>2</sup> This garden is attached to the inner court and is looked after by the mistress of the house. It is the duty of a good housewife says Vâtsyâya, to procure the seeds of the common Indian kitchen vegetables and medicinal herbs and plant them each in its season.<sup>3</sup> In neat and clean spots in the garden where the ground has been well dressed, the lady of the house plants beds of green vegetables,—clumps of the tall sugarcane, patches of stunted shrubs of the mustard and similar herbs, and thickets of the dark *tamâla*.<sup>4</sup> The flower-garden

१ तत् भवनमासकोदकं वृक्षवाटिकावद्धिभक्तकम्मकदं द्विवासगृहं कारयेत् । ..  
*Kâmasûtra*, p. 42 (*sûtra* 4).

२ मध्ये कूर्व वापीं दीधिको वा खानयेत् । — *Ibid.*, p. 225 (*sûtra* 8).

३ मूलकालूकपलहूनीदमनकाक्रातकैर्वाहकत्रपुसवातीक कुम्मायडालाबुसूरशाशुकनासास्ववं गुसातिलपर्शिकाप्रिमन्मश्वशुनपलायडुप्रभृतीनां सवौषधीनां च वीजवृहयां काले दापश्व  
*Ibid.*, p. 228 (*sûtra* 29).

४ परिपूर्ण च हरितशाकवप्रानिकास्तम्ब्राक्षीरकसर्षपाजमोदशतपुण्यातमालगुरुमांश्व कारयेत् । — *Ibid.*, p. 225 (*sûtra* 6).

equally receives her tender care ; she has to see that it is laid out with beds of plants that yield an abundance of flowers—those that regale the nose with their sweet perfume, like the *mallikā*, the *jāti* or the *naramālikā*, as well as those that delight the eye like the *japā* with its crimson glory or the *kurantaka* (amaranth) with its unfading yellow splendour, and besides, there should be in this garden, rows of shrubs yielding fragrant leaves or roots, like *bilaka* and *usīra*. In the gardens there are arbors and sometimes vine-groves where she gets built *sthāndilas* or raised platforms with pleasant and comfortable seats for rest or recreation.<sup>1</sup> Flowers should be spread on these seats in these sweet sylvan retreats and a swing be hung at a spot well guarded from the sun by its leafy arbor.<sup>2</sup> An abundance of various flowers should also be arranged with art, here and there over the residential house which must be kept scrupulously clean, the floor should be beautifully smooth and polished so as to soothe the eyes ; besides attending to these duties, the lady of the house should also see that at her abode the morning, noon and evening rites—sacrifices and gifts—are duly observed and the gods worshipped at the sanctuaries of the household ; for she must realise, as an ancient teacher, *Gonardīya*, has observed, that nothing pleases and charms the heart of a householder so much as a well-kept, neat and tidy home where the gods are respected and

1. कुञ्जकामलकमल्लिकाजातीकुरणटकनवभालिकातगरनन्द्यावर्तजपागुलमानन्द्याश्च वहु-  
पुष्पान् वालकोशीरकपातालिकांश्च वृक्षवाटिकायां च स्थिरिडलानि भनोज्ञानि कारयेत् ।—

*Ibid.*, p. 226 (*sūtra 7*), also वृक्षवाटिकां मृद्गोक्तामरुपं ।—*ibid.*, p. 284 (*sūtra 17*).

2. स्वास्तीर्णा प्रेहुदोला वृक्षवाटिकायां सप्रद्वज्ञाता स्थिरिडलपीठिका च सङ्कुष्ठमेति  
भनविन्द्यासः ।—*Ibid.*, p. 45 (*sūtra 15*).

the religious duties well observed.<sup>1</sup> The mistress of the house should also see that her kitchen is situated in a quiet and retired spot and is clean and attractive.<sup>2</sup> The proper keeping of the house was thus the particular care of the wife of the *nāgaraka* and the erection of a noble pile of buildings is, according to our author, among the most earnest desires of women.<sup>3</sup>

Large and magnificent houses *harmyas* and *prāsādas*, were known to *Vātsyāyana*; the *nāgaraka* sometimes might enjoy moonlight on the terrace of a palace and examine the stars and planets with his beloved.<sup>4</sup> The walls of the houses were sometimes beautifully polished so as to reflect the image of a girl, and not infrequently the roof of the house stood on pillars, *stambhas*.<sup>5</sup> The *Buddhacarita* mentions an iron pillar and the *Saundarananda Kāvya* speaks of a pillar of gold and also of a minor support or *upastambha*.<sup>6</sup> The floor of a palace was sometimes decorated with mosaic work, being inlaid with coral or with precious stones. In the palace-gardens there were *sanudra-ghras* or cool summer-houses surrounded by water, washed as it were, by the sea, and also rooms in the walls of which there were secret

1 वेगम च शुचि सुमंशुष्यानं विश्वितविविधकसुमे संशुचाभ्युभितलं छटादर्शनं विषवणाचरितवलिकम् पूजितद्वावायत् कुर्यात्। न आतोऽन्यद् गृहस्थाना वित्तयाहकमस्तीति गोवदीयः।—Ibid, p. 224 (*sūtra* 3).

2 महानसं च सुग्रस्त्वा हृषीनीयं च।—Ibid, p. 227 (*sūtra* 18).

3 गृहस्थोदारसं करणे महार्हभान्दः परिचारकैष गृहपरिष्कादस्त्रोऽवलता।—Ibid, p. 341 (*sūtra* 26).

4 छम्भतलस्थितयोर्धा चन्द्रिकासेवनार्थमासनम्।—Ibid, p. 174 (*sūtra* 19).

5 आदर्शं कुर्ये सत्त्विष्वं वा प्रयोज्यायाम्भाद्यात्मनमाकारमदर्शनार्थमिव कार्यम्।—Ibid, p. 110 (*sūtra* 30); तदेव कुर्यासन्दर्शनं सन्दर्शनं वा एतु टकमवपीष्येदिति पौष्टिकम्।—Ibid, p. 96 (*sūtra* 13).

6 सम्भवायस्म—*Buddhacarita*, xiv, 12; सुवर्णकाव्यवाच्चाणः।—*Saundarananda Kāvya*, i. 19; उपस्थः विपतिषो द्वं ज्ञेयो विष्मनः।—Ibid, xiv, 15.

passages for water to circulate and take away the heat.<sup>1</sup> Bhāsa's *Swapna-Vāsavadattam* (Act V) has such a *samudragṛha*, and in later dramas also it is not rare; the *Viṣṇu-Smṛti* (V. 117) prescribes punishment for a *samudragṛhabhedaka*. Secret pleasure-houses standing amidst the waters of garden tanks are referred to by Kālidāsa.<sup>2</sup> Besides the garden, Vātsyāyana has not given much detailed description of the *antahpura* or the inner sanctum of the ladies. Bhāsa designates it as the inner court with apartments or houses on four sides (*abhyntara-catuḥśālā*), which suggests the plan of construction of the inner apartments of an Indian house from very ancient times.<sup>3</sup> This plan combined the advantages of seclusion and privacy together with provision for light and air.

Vātsyāyana describes with greater fulness the outer chambers which the master called particularly his own and where he spent by far the greater portion of his day and night. An examination of the furniture and equipments of these chambers will give us an insight into the life of the man of wealth and fashion in the third century after Christ. The articles that Vātsyāyana first draws attention to, in the master's apartment, are two couches with beds, soft and comfortable and spotlessly white, sinking in the middle, and having rests for the head and feet at the top and the bottom. At the head of his bed is a *kūrca-sthāna*, a stand or perhaps a niche for placing an image of the deity that he worships, as the commentary, Jayamāngalā explains; besides, at the head there is also an elevated shelf serving the purposes of

1 यहः प्रवालकुटिसे दर्शयिष्यामि भर्णभूमिकां इच्छाटिकां च वीकामण्डपं समुद्रमध्यादान् गृहमिति संचाराचित्कर्माणि ।—*Kāmasūtra*, pp. 283-84 (*sūtra* 17).

2 दौर्जिका: गृहमोहनवह्नः ।—*Raghuvamśa*, xix. 9.

3 प्रवेश्यतामभान्नरचतुःशालम् ।—Bhāsa, *Cārudatta*, ed. by T. Gaṇapati Śāstri, Act I. See also *Catuḥśāla* in Bhāsa's *Avimūraka*, Trivandrum Sans. Series, pp. 23, 42, 86.

a table whereon are placed articles necessary for his toilet in the early dawn, namely, fragrant ointments such as sandal-paste, a garland of flowers, small pots containing bees' wax and sweet perfumes, the skin of the *mātulūṅga* or the citron fruit for perfuming the mouth and also betel-leaves prepared with spices and scents. On the floor is a vessel for catching the spittle (*putadgraha*). On the wall, on brackets (elephants' tusks—*nāgadantaka*) are ranged his *vinā*, the national instrument of music in ancient India, a casket containing brushes and other requisites for painting, a book—preferably a poetical work—and garlands of the yellow amarnath (*kurāṇṭaka*), chosen because it does not fade or wither soon and therefore is good for decorating the rooms. Not far from the couch, on the floor, is spread a carpet with cushions for the head, and besides, there are boards for playing at chess and dice. Outside the room is the *nāgaraka*'s aviary where are hung cages of birds for game and sport;<sup>1</sup> we read in the *Buddhacarita* that the birds in such household aviaries in the city of Kapilavastu were disturbed by the hurried movements of ladies hastening to catch a glimpse of the young prince Siddhārtha as he passed along the street.<sup>2</sup> At a somewhat retired spot in the house are places where our *nāgaraka* amuses himself by working at the lathe or the chisel.<sup>3</sup>

### THE DAILY LIFE OF THE NĀGARAKA

Vātsyāyana has left us a description of the occupation of the *nāgaraka* during the whole of the day, which though brief,

१ वाणी च वासरहि सुशासुभयोपदानं भये विनतं युक्तो नरचक्रदं अयनीयं स्नानं प्रतिशयिका च । तस्य शिरोभागे शूचयानम् । वेदिका च । तत्र रात्रिशेषमनुसिद्धं सालाहं सिक्षकरच्छकं सौमित्रिकपुटिका मातुलुङ्गलचक्रसामुलालि च स्युः । भूमी पतहः च । नागदलावसत्ता वीणा, चित्रकला, बर्तिकासमुद्रको, यः कवित् पुस्तकः, कुरुद्युक्तमालाच । नातिदूरे भूमी इत्यासरणं समस्तकम् । आवैफलकं युतफलकं च । तस्य वदिः क्रौंकाशक्तिनिपञ्चराति ।—*Kāmasūtra*, pp. 43-45 (sūtras 5-13).

2 विवाहयन्तो गृहपविद्युक्तान्वयन्वेगात् समाचिपन्नः ।—*Buddhacarita*. iii. 15.

3 एकान्ते च तर्कुसच्चव्याप्तानगम्बासो च श्रीकालाम् ।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 45 (sūtra 14).

yet brings up very beautifully the man of fashion of those days before our eyes. Our *nāgaraka* gets up early in the morning and after attending to his morning duties and cleaning his mouth and teeth, proceeds to his toilet. The first article in this toilet is the *anulepana*, a fragrant ointment ordinarily made of fine sandal-wood paste, or of preparations of a variety of sweet-smelling substances.<sup>1</sup> He applies a suitable quantity of this ointment to his person; it would be considered bad taste if he used too much of this perfume; he then scents his clothes in the sweet-smelling smoke of incense (*dhūpa*) thrown into the fire and wears a garland on the head, or hangs it round his neck. He applies collyrium made of various substances to his eyes. To his lips, already reddened by the betel he has chewed, he applies *ulaktaka* (a red dye made from lac), to impart a deeper crimson to them and then rubs them over with wax to make the dye fast. Then he looks at himself in a glass, chews spiced betel-leaves to perfume his<sup>2</sup> mouth, and proceeds to attend to his business.<sup>3</sup> He attends to his hair and wears rings on his fingers that are sometimes of great value.<sup>4</sup> He generally wears two garments, a *vāsas* or *vastra* and an *uttariya* or a wrap for the upper part of the body. This upper garment was sometimes very highly scented with rich perfumes or flowers.<sup>4</sup> Bhāsa tells us that the rich fragrance of Cāru-

1 अस्त्रीकृतं चन्दनमन्धानुसीपनं ।—Ibid, p. 173 (*sūtra* 14).

2 स प्रातरक्षाय कृतनियतक्षयः, गर्हीतदत्तधावनः, सावधाऽनुसीपनं धूपः च जन्मिति गर्हीता, दला सिक्षकमलताकं च डक्काऽदर्शे मुखम्, गर्हीतमुखवासतामूलः कार्यात्मनितिष्ठेत् ।—Ibid, pp. 45-46 (*sūtra* 16). Jayamāngalā (explains)—मात्रयेति, प्रभूतात्मविषयादिशङ्खादनागरकः स्वात् कार्यात्मनिति प्रकृतत्वात् ।—p. 46.

3 अस्त्रीयवास च निधानम् ।—Ibid, p. 292 (*sūtra* 20) etc. अनेकशतसहस्रमूलम् । शीघ्रकम् ।—*Lalita-vistara* (ed. by Lefmann), xiii. 142.

4 See *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 274, 196, etc., also तत्र महाईगम्भसुखरीयं क्रमसु चार्कात्र शाद्वलीयकं च तद्वस्तात्मामूलवहर्षं गोष्ठीगमनीयतत्त्वं केशवलपुष्पशब्दनम् ।—Ibid, p. 261 (*sūtra* 21).

datta's wearing apparel assured Vasantasenā that though impoverished, he was not quite unmindful of the amenities of youthful society.<sup>1</sup> At Nanda's house at Kapilavastu when Buddha entered it, some of the maids were preparing the perfumed paste while others were perfuming the clothes.<sup>2</sup> In the *Lalita-vistara* we read that King Śuddhodana ordered that all those who would attend on Māyādevī on her journey to the garden of Lumbī, should wear clothes, soft and fine, coloured with pleasant dyes and smelling sweet with the best of the scents. Similarly, in another place in the same book, we read of a perfumed garment of the exquisite colour of the *nāgakesara*.<sup>3</sup>

Sweet scents, we thus see, played a very important part in the toilet of the *nāgaraka*. He made an abundant use of flowers, he rubbed sweet-scented ointments over his body and besides, he used other perfumes—*sangandhikas*—and a box of scents, a *sangandhika-puṭikā*, was kept handy by every *nāgaraka*. He perfumes his mouth with betel-leaves prepared with sweet-scented spiccs. The fragrant smoke of incense was made to circulate through his rooms and impart a perfume to his clothes. The *Lalita-vistara* corroborates Vātsyāyana about the plentiful use of perfumes. Besides the scented ointment or *anulepana*, the *Lalita-vistara* mentions scented waters of various kinds, perfumed oils and fragrant powders of sandal, flowers or other sweet-smelling things.<sup>4</sup> These objects—flowers, perfumes and betel-leaves

1 गच्छिका—( प्रावारके रहीला सहर्षम् ) अणदासीया जीवयं से पठवासगम्भो सूष्टि ।—Bhāsa, *Cūrundatta* (Trivandrum Sans. Series), Act I, p. 26.

2 काचित् पिपेषान्तर्विक्षिप्तं हि वासोऽङ्गाना काचित् अवासयत् ।—*Saundarananda-Kāvya*, iv. 26.

3 वरसुरभिसुगम्भो भावरङ्गी विचित्राः ।

वस्त्रं वृद्धं मनीजां प्रावृषोद्या उद्द्वाः ॥—*Lalita-vistara* (ed. by Lefmann), vii. 80; शीत्रं गृह्णत नागपुष्पकचिरां वस्त्रं सुगम्भो शमाः ।—Ibid, xviii. 282.

4 विविधगम्भोदकापूर्णचटपरिष्ठीर्तः ।—Ibid, xv. 218. See also ibid, vii. 96 and xiv. 269; दिव्यगम्भपरिवासित-तैलपरिष्ठीर्तानि ।—Ibid, vii. 96; देवी पुष्पांगक-तगर-चन्दन-चूर्ण-वर्णं ।—Ibid, xxii. 342.

formed the most ordinary gifts exchanged between friends and lovers.<sup>1</sup>

After attending to his business in the morning, the *nāgaraka* takes his bath ; this he does every day but there are other attendant circumstances that are repeated at varying intervals. Every other day he gets his limbs massaged and shampooed (*utsādana*) ; every third day he cleanses his person with soap-like substances that yield a lather with water (*phenaka*). This last was considered an indispensable article for one who aspired to decent life in those days, as we see that even when a man became too poor to maintain himself as a *nāgaraka* and became a *pīthamarda*, his *phenaka* or soap marked him out from ordinary men. As regards shaving, the *nāgaraka* was behind the modern man of fashion ; he got his chin and lips cleaned every fourth day and this was probably considered conducive to long life (*āyusyam*) and a more thorough tonsorial operation was performed every fifth or every tenth day. This completes the bath.<sup>2</sup> Though he was thus not so fastidious as our modern dandies as regards the hair on his face, he was certainly more careful about his finger nails. They were specially dressed, particularly those of the left hand ; the points of the nails should always be fine and sometimes they were cut into three or more teeth like a saw. The nails must be well-set, smooth, bright, scrupulously clean, not broken, and soft and glossy in appearance. The people of Gauda (modern Bengal) had very fine and long nails that imparted a grace to their hands and were very attractive to women, and the southerners (the *Dākṣinātyāḥ*) had small nails which were good for work but of which they made very great artistic use, and the people of *Mahārāstra* were midway between the two. The use of the nails was a great art which

1 *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 259, 261, 274, 308, 319.

2 निर्यं आनं, द्वितीयकासुत्सादनं, द्वितीयकः फेनकः, चतुर्थमधायश्च, पञ्चमकं दशमकं वा प्रत्यायुष-मित्यज्ञेयम् ।—*Ibid*, p. 46 (*sūtra* 17).

the *nāgaraka* took great pains in acquiring ; with them, he skilfully and without causing pain, affixed on his beloved, marks that might be straight, curved, circular, semicircular like the crescent moon, or which might resemble the tiger's claw, the peacock's foot, the leap of a hare or the leaf of a blue lotus.<sup>1</sup> Similar care was taken of the teeth and artistic use made of them, because, Vātsyāyana says, no other art increases love so much as the clever use of the nails and teeth.<sup>2</sup> Besides attending to the daily ablution and the other things noted above, for keeping his person clean, the *nāgaraka* must always carry a handkerchief (*karpaṭa*) with himself for removing perspiration.<sup>3</sup>

He takes two meals a day, in the forenoon, and the afternoon, but according to *Cārāyanu*, and earlier teacher, the last meal had better be taken in the evening.<sup>4</sup> Three kinds of hard or soft food and drinks, *bhakṣya*, *bhojya* and *peya* corresponding to the *khādanīya*, *bhojanīya* and *pāna* of the Buddhist sacred books,<sup>5</sup> have been mentioned by Vātsyāyana. Among his articles of diet we notice rice, wheat, barley, pulses, a large number of vegetables, milk and its preparations including *ghee*, meat and sweets, besides salt and oil. Among the sweets, we have molasses (*guḍa*) and sugar (*sarkarā*) as well as sweetmeats (*khaṇḍa-khādyāni*).<sup>6</sup> Fish is nowhere mentioned by our author as an article of diet. Meat was eaten boiled as soup, and dry or roasted. To desist from eating meat, as prescribed in the law books, was considered to be an act of merit (*dharma*).<sup>7</sup> The *nāgaraka*'s

1 Ibid, pp. 112-20 (*sūtras* 1-31).

2 Ibid, pp. 121-30 (*sūtras* 1-42).

3 सातव्याच्च संहतकाचास्त्रेदापनीदः ।—Ibid, p. 47 (*sūtra* 18).

4 पूर्वाभाषपराङ्ग्योर्भीजनम् । सायं चारयणस्त्रेदापनीदः ।—Ibid, p. 47 (*sūtras* 19 and 20).

5 *Mahāvagga*, vi. 28. 10 and vi. 35. 2.

6 See *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 228-30, 337, 369-71 ; also जलादुपानं वा खण्डखाद्य कमन्दवा प्रकृतिसाक्षात्युक्तस्मादव्यपयुक्तीयाताम् ।—Ibid, p. 174 (*sūtra* 16).

7 प्रहसेभाय नांसभच्यादिभाय शास्त्रादेव निवारणं धन्वः ।—Ibid, p. 12 (*sūtra* 7).

drinks (*pānakāni*) were also various : besides water and milk, he drank fresh juice, perhaps of the various kinds of palm, extracts of meat, *congey* (or rice gruel), *sherbets*, juice of fruits such as mangoes and citrons mixed with sugar ; of stronger drinks, he used various wines like *surū*, *madhu*, *maireya* and *āsava*,—which he drank from a *chāsaka*, a vessel of wood or metal, often accompanied by various kinds of sweets, and savouries of bitter and acrid taste in order to impart a relish to drink.<sup>1</sup>

After the midday meal the *nāgaraka* enjoys his siesta, he diverts himself by pleasant talk with his friends, the *pīthamarda*, the *vītu* or the *vidūsaka*, listens to the talk of parrots, views fights between cocks, quails or rams, or is engaged in various kinds of artistic enjoyments. Besides the animals mentioned above, he also kept for his own amusement a number of cuckoos for their sweet melody and peacock for their glorious plumage and also monkeys. At the king's palace, besides these animals of sport, lions and tigers were also kept in cages.<sup>2</sup>

In the afternoon, after he has dressed himself, the *nāgaraka* goes out to attend a *gosthī* or a social gathering where he engages, as we shall see below, in pleasant intellectual diversions with his friends and in tests of skill in the various arts. At night-fall, our *nāgaraka* enjoys music, vocal and instrumental, occasionally attended with dances. After music, in his own room which has been made sweet and clean and gay with flowers, and while its fragrant air is charged with

1 अच्छरसकयुपमस्यवाग्म् भृष्टमासोपद्वानि पानकानि चृतफलानि शृष्टमासं सातुलुभृष्टकाणि सशर्कराणि च व्यादीश्वसामप्तं च । चष्टकहसः पायथेत् ।—Ibid, p. 174 (*sūtras* 17 and 15); तद नष्टमैरेयासवान् विविधलब्ध्यफलहरितश्चक्षित्तकटुकार्णीपद्वशान् वेश्या; पायदीयुरनुपिषेयुष ।—Ibid, p. 52 (*sūtra* 38).

2 भोजनानन्तरं शुक्लादिकामलापमव्यापाराः लावकामुक टसीष्युद्धानि तासाय कालाशीः, पीठमद्विटविद्विष्टकायत्ता व्यापारा, विवाहया च ।—Ibid, p. 47 (*sūtra* 21). . भृष्टक टलावकशारिका परम्परा-मसुरवानरव्यवाहासविद्याम् ।—Ibid, p. 229 (*sūtra* 33). कौशलगान् यन्तर्मिश्वरादीनि च ।—Ibid, p. 284 (*sūtra* 17); see also p. 307 (*sūtra* 25).

the breath of sweet incense circulating through it, the *nāgaraka* with his associates and friends, awaits there the arrival of his mistress. This completes his daily life.<sup>1</sup>

A word here about the *nāgaraka*'s friends whom we meet again and again in the *Kāmasūtra*, will not be out of place. Besides the many artists and craftsmen who served him in his quest of love and pleasure and who are called his *mitras* or companions by *Vātsyāyana*, the *nāgaraka* appears to have possessed some real, true and devoted friends. *Vātsyāyana* says that fast and genuine friendship often sprang up among those who had grown up together from infancy tended by the same nurse, who in early boyhood were fellow playmates or were at school together, those who were marked by the same temperament and the same tastes in pleasure and sport, were attached to each other by mutual obligations and whose closest secrets were known to each other. *Vātsyāyana* regards it particularly fortunate in friendship when the friendship has come down between two families for several generations, has never been tainted by selfishness or greed, nor has been changed by time or by any considerations whatsoever and where the mutual secrets have never been betrayed.<sup>2</sup>

#### SPORTS AND FESTIVITIES

Besides the various sports and amusements that enlivened the daily life of the *nāgaraka*, there were many high days

1 गृहीतप्रसाधानस्यापराह्न गोहीविहाराः । प्रदोषे च संगीतकानि । तदन्ते च प्रसाधिते वासरद्वै संचारितसुरभिष्ठुपै सप्तसाथ्य शश्यायामभिसारिकाणां प्रतीचर्ण, दूतीर्णां प्रेषणं, स्वयं वा गमनम् ।—Ibid, pp. 47-48 (*sūtras* 22-24). नागरकः सह सिद्धत्रयेन परिचारकैश्च ज्ञातपुष्पोपहरि सञ्चारितसुरभिष्ठुपै रथ्याचारे प्रसाधिते वासरद्वै etc. सन्तुष्मदृतं वा गीतं वादिद्व ।—Ibid, p. 172 (*sūtras* 1 and 7).

2 सहपादुकीडितसुपकारसंबद्धं समानशीलत्वसमं सहाय्यायिनं यथास मर्माणि रहस्यानि च विद्याइ यस्य चाय विद्याहा धावपत्वं सहस्रृष्ट्वा निवम् । पितृपैतामहभिसंबादकमहादृकातं वयस्य भूतमलीभर्णीलमपरिहायैममनविसावीति मित्रसंपत् ।—Ibid, pp. 68-69 (*sūtras* 35-36); see also *sūtras* 37 and 38.

and holidays when he made merry with his friends and companions. With regard to all these games and festivities enjoyed in company, Vātsyāyana gives the sage advice that they can be relished best in the company of friends of the same social status, but not with those that are either above or below one, because permanent good relations and mutual understanding can only be established when each party in a sport seeks to afford pleasure to the other and where each is honoured and respected by the other.<sup>1</sup>

Vātsyāyana classifies the occasional festivities into five groups. In the first place he mentions the festivals in connection with the worship of different deities (*samāja*, *yātrā* and *ghaṭū*), sometimes attended with grand processions; then come the *gosthīs* or social gatherings of both sexes; next *āpānakas* or drinking parties and *udyāna-yātrās* or garden-parties, and last of all various social diversions in which many persons take part (*samasyā kruḍā*).<sup>2</sup>

### SAMĀJA

At the temple of *Sarasvatī*, the goddess of learning and the fine arts, on a fixed day every fortnight, that is, on the *tithi* or lunar phase specially auspicious to the deity worshipped, a *samāja* or an assemblage of *nāgarakas* was held regularly. They were accompanied by musicians, dancers and other artists permanently employed by them for performances in honour of the deity. Besides, when any itinerant parties of actors, dancers or other such "artists" visited the town, they were afforded an opportunity of showing their

1 समस्यादा: सहस्रोङ्गा विवाहाः सङ्गतानि च ।-

समानैरेव कार्याणि नोचमैर्नापि वाऽधर्मैः ॥

परन्परसुखासोदा ग्रीष्मा थव प्रमुखते ।

विशेषव्यक्ती चार्योन्व संबन्धः स विद्योपते ॥—Ibid, p. 190 (*sūtras* 22 and 25).

2 घटाचिवन्धनं, गोष्ठीसमवायः, समापानकम्, उद्यानगमनं, समस्याः ग्रीष्माय प्रवर्तयेत् ।—Ibid, p. 49 (*sūtra* 26).

skill at the temple before the divinity. On the day following the performance the party had to be given their stipulated rewards, and then they might be dismissed or asked to repeat their performances at the pleasure of their patrons. On special occasions, when performances on a grand scale were arranged, parties of actors might co-operate with each other and give a joint performance and it was the duty of the corporation or guild (*yāra*), to which the *nāgaraka* belonged, to honour and treat with hospitality the strangers who attended these gatherings. Similar festivities of various kinds were held on a grand scale in honour of different deities according to the customs appertaining to each.<sup>1</sup> On some of these occasions there were processions (*yātrā*) like the procession of images that Fa-Hien saw in Khotan when "they swept and watered the streets inside the city, making a grand display in the lanes and by-ways."<sup>2</sup> In these processions both men and women joined and *Vātsyāyana* says that they afforded opportunities for meeting one's lady-love.<sup>3</sup> Even a virtuous matron could attend a religious ceremony with the permission of her husband.<sup>4</sup>

### GOSTHII

We now come to the *gosthī* or social gathering where the *nāgaraka* diverts himself in pleasant talk with persons

१ पश्य मासस वा प्रदातिःहनि सरस्वत्या भवते नियुक्तानां निर्व समाजः । कुमीलवादागत्त्वः प्रेचाणकमेष्टा दद्यः । हितीयःहनि तेभ्यः पूजा निघ्नते अभिरून् । ततो यदा शृङ्खर्मेष्टा दर्शनमुत्सर्गो वा । व्यसनीत्सर्वेषु देवां परपरस्तैर्कार्यात् । आगमन् च कृतसमवायानां पूजनमध्यपदिष्यते गणधर्मः । एतेन तं तं देवताविरोधसुहित्यं संभावितस्त्रितोर्विद्या घटा आस्तातः । — Ibid, pp. 49-51 (*sūtras* 27-33).

2 Legge, *Fa-Hien*, p. 18.

3 स तु ( समागमः ) देवताभिगमने याचायासुद्यानक्रीडायां जलावतरणे विवाहे यज्ञवसनीत्सर्वेष्ट-य ग्रन्तपाते चौरविष्टमे जनपदय चक्रारोहणे प्रेचाव्यापारिषु तेषु तेषु च कार्ये तु । — *Kāmasūtra*, p. 274 (*sūtra* 41).

4 आवाहे विवाहे यज्ञे गमनं सखीभिः सह गोष्ठीं देवतामिगमनमित्यसुभाता कुर्यात् । — Ibid, p. 226 (*sūtra* 15).

of the same status and position as himself by their education, intelligence, character, wealth and age; there he engages in competitions in making verses or in various other sports of skill and art.<sup>1</sup> Affording, as these *gosthis* did, opportunities for the *nāgaraka* to exhibit his intellectual accomplishments and mastery of the arts, they were most popular with him, being attended by him every afternoon and they were also held on a comparatively large scale on special occasions. Of the branches of literary art in which competitions were held, we may glean the following from Vātsyāyana's list of the sixty-four arts: there were competitions in the extempore composition of verses, completion of a stanza of which a part only was given, the proper reading of books, with proper intonation and accent, either singly or in groups, the reading of passages in prose or verse that on account of many harsh sounds were hard to pronounce, and the art of composing and expounding passages written in a secret code or cypher. These competitions required knowledge of foreign tongues and provincial dialects, knowledge of lexicons and specical vocabularies, of metres and the figures of rhetoric, the knowledge of dramas and their stories, in short, a very comprehensive literary and artistic training. One game is described called *pratimālā* in which a number of persons had to recite verses one after another, the condition being that every reciter must repeat a verse commencing with the letter with which the previous speaker's verse ended and any one unable to supply his verse sufficiently quickly had to pay a forfeit. Besides these literary competitions, there were tests of proficiency in the fine arts such as painting, singing, instrumental music and the like and also of manual skill and dexterity in many of the practical arts such

<sup>1</sup> वैश्याभवने सभाद्यामन्यतमस्योदवसिते वा सभानविद्याद्विशीक्षिविद्यवयसां सह वैश्याभिरत्मुद्देश्य-राजापैरासमवस्थी गोष्ठी । तथा चैवां वाव्यसमस्या कलासमस्या च ।—Ibid, p. 51 (*sūtras* 34 and 35).

as the stringing together of flowers in a garland and so on.<sup>1</sup>

At these gatherings were invited *gāṇikās* or brilliant artists who by their education and knowledge of the arts, could please the *nāgaraka* by meeting him on his own ground, viz., in mental and aesthetic culture, and who were therefore loved and honoured by the people. Sometimes the parties were held at the house of one of the *gāṇikās*, or the *nāgarakas* met at each other's house, or they assembled in the *sabhā*, the public hall of the city or of the *gāṇa* or corporation to which every citizen belonged. Here the citizens came together to discuss politics and philosophy, or to hold competitions in literature or art, or merely to enjoy themselves in convivial parties. This *sabhā* of Vātsyāyana is the direct descendant of the *samiti* or *pariṣad* of the Vedic times, at one of which, viz., that of the *Pāñcālas*, Śvetaketu Āruneya, who is reputed to be the founder of the science of erotics, was defeated by a Kṣatriya.<sup>2</sup>

At the *gosthis* were also discussed the sixty-four *Pāñcāla* or *kāma-kalās* and Vātsyāyana declares that a person possessing a knowledge of this sixty-four, even though devoid of all the other sciences, leads the talk at the *gosthis* of men and women; and on the other hand, a person who speaks cleverly on other subjects but knows not the sixty-four, is not much respected in the discussions in the assembly of the learned.<sup>3</sup>

1. मानसी काव्यक्रिया, काव्यसमस्यापूर्वस्थम्, उत्तरकाव्याचनम्, संपाठ्यम्, दुर्बोचकयोगाः, चेचित्विक्रियाः, दैश्वभाषाविज्ञानम्, अभिधानक्रीयः, कृत्यांश्चाचनम्, नाटकाल्याधिकादर्शनम्, प्रतिमाला । गीतम्, वायम्, शृण्यम्, आलेख्यम्; माल्यगम्यनविक्रियाः, शंखरकार्पीष्योऽनम्, etc.—Ibid, p. 32.

2. तद्वामुच्चला लोककालाः पूज्याः प्रीतिसमानाशाहारिताः; Ibid, p. 52 (*sūtra* 36). For Śvetaketu, see ibid, p. 5 (*sūtra* 9); also, श्रेतकेतुर्हृ वा आरुण्येः पंचालानां परिषद्भाजगामः; Brhadāraṇyakopaniṣad vi. 2. 1, and श्रेतकेतुर्हृकृष्णेयः पंचालानां समितिमिथाय, Chāndogyopaniṣad, v. 3. 1.

3. त्रुवन्नाम्यनामानामिष्य चतुःषष्ठिविवर्जितः ।  
विष्वन्संसदि नाम्यर्थं नामासु परिपूर्वते ॥

At the *gosthī* one is neither to speak too much in Sanskrit for he may then be considered a pedant, just as in England two centuries ago to write English in strict accordance with orthography and syntax was considered not necessary for a gentleman ; nor should the *nāgaraka* speak too much in a local dialect, because then he ran the risk of being regarded as uneducated and uncultured ; he should strike a middle course and have full control over both and then he was sure to win great respect.<sup>1</sup> The prevalent language of the period as seen in inscriptions and in the Mahāyāna literature, bears testimony to the fact that the current speech at the time, at least among the cultured classes, was a mixture of Sanskrit and Prakrit. The learned people like Asvaghosa, of course, wrote pure Sanskrit, but the language of conversation among the educated was apparently a mixture of Sanskrit and the provincial dialect (*desabhāṣā*) as recommended by the author of the *Kāmasūtra*.

There were *gosthīs* for sinister purposes too in the days of Vātsyāyana who warns the *nāgaraka* against frequenting an assembly that is disliked by the people, that is not governed by proper rules and hence is likely to indulge in license or to run beyond the bounds of decency ; nor should he attend a *gosthī* that is intent upon doing mischief to others. A person wins success in life by attending an association that makes the imparting of pleasure to people its sole business and has sport and diversion for its sole object.<sup>2</sup>

वर्जितोऽप्यव्यविचारेतया यस्त्वन्तःकातः ।

स गोड्यां नरकारीणां कथास्वयं विगाहते ॥—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 182 (*sūtras* 50-51).

१ नात्यन् संस्कृतमैव नात्यन् देशभाषयाः ।

कथा गोड्यापु कथयंहोक्ते बहुमतो भवेत् ॥—*Ibid*, p. 58 (*sūtra* 50).

२ या गोड्यो लोकविहिटा या च स्वैरविसर्पिणीः ।

परिषिद्धात्मिका या च न तामवतरेत् च ॥

लोकवितात्मवर्तिन्या गोड्यामात्रे ककार्यद्या ।

गोड्या सह चरन् विर्वाहोक्ते विद्विं नियम्यति ॥—*Ibid*, p. 58 (*sūtras* 51-2).

The *gosthī* on account of its association with art, refinement and culture, was much appreciated by the people in Vātsyāyana's times. A *nāgaraka* was expected to be liberal in spending on *gosthīs* and his success in courtship and love depended in no small measure on his power to shine in the sports and festivities including the *gosthī* and *samāja*.<sup>1</sup> In Bhāsa's dramas we meet with many references to *gosthī*; his *Avimāraka* mourns the supposed loss of his friend who was humorous at *gosthīs*.<sup>2</sup>

Women also met together in *gosthīs* or social assemblies among themselves. For an unmarried girl it was considered a qualification that she was fond of *gosthīs* and *kalās*. Married ladies also sometimes, with the permission of their husbands, instituted among their own friends *gosthīs* or social gatherings where they discussed artistic and literary matters. But a married woman who was too fond of instituting *gosthīs* was looked upon with suspicion, specially one who arranged such gatherings in the house of a youthful neighbour.<sup>3</sup> In Bhāsa's *Avimāraka* (Act V) the maids invite the *Vidūṣaka* to recount a story which they would listen to among their *gosthījanas* in the inner court.<sup>4</sup>

## ĀPĀNAKA

Besides the *gosthīs* the *nāgarakas* also met at each other's house to hold drinking parties where they drank various kinds of liquors with sauces of various tastes and flavours, but

1 कविराज्यानकुशो—विविधशिलशो—घटागोड्हैमेश्वरकस्माजसमस्तानीडमशोलो—अमदप इति नायकगुणः।—Ibid, p. 302 (*sūtra* 12)..

2 गोड्हैपु शास्त्रः, Trivandrum Series, p. 69.

3 गोड्हैकाम्पिया चैति नायिकागुणः—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 303 (*sūtra* 13); सखीभिः सह गोड्है।—p. 226 (*sūtra* 15); तदण्मातिवेष्यरहे गोड्हैयोजिनी।—p. 254 (*sūtra* 52).

4 इसे गतिश्च चलस्थायं परिचितम् गोड्हैश्चयेन सह त्रुचलं सुषामि, Trivandrum Series, p. 86

मूढ वाद्यय चलस्थायि उचितिश्च गोड्हैश्चयेन सह सुषामि, p. 87.

abstention from wine was considered a special qualification in a *nāgaraka*.<sup>1</sup>

### GARDEN PARTIES

Next we come to another diversion which was very dear to the soul of the *nāgaraka*, viz., *udyāna-yātrā* or picnics in gardens. Every great city in those days was surrounded by extensive gardens where the residents of the city could find some relief from the congested streets of the town. Round Kapilavastu, says the *Lalitavistara*, five hundred gardens sprang up for the diversions of Bodhisattva, and prince Siddhārtha went out through the gates of the city for enjoying himself in the gardens outside.<sup>2</sup> In the *Kāmasūtra* also we find that these gardens were outside the town and a whole day was spent in the picnic there. Early in the morning a party of well-dressed *nāgarakas* would go out of the town mounted on horses accompanied by *gāyikās* and followed by servants ; there they would arrange for their daily meal and pass the time in pleasant games of chance or in diverting themselves with the fights of cocks, quails or rams or in any other way that they pleased, in the afternoon they would return wearing some token of remembrance of the picnic such as a bunch of flowers or a twig from a garden-tree. Similar parties were enjoyed in connection with sports in water, which took place in artificial lakes or tanks from which all mischievous water-animals had first been removed.<sup>3</sup> Picnicking in the

1. See footnote 1, p. 160 and footnote 1, p. 167.

2. पञ्च चोदायानशतानि समलान्नगरस्य प्रादुर्बभूद्वर्द्धिसत्स्वस्य परिभीगाय ।—*Lalita-vistara*, (ed. by Lefmann), vii. 95 ; दोधिसुत्स्वस्य पूर्वेण नगरस्तरेणोदायानभूमिभिनिक्रामतो महता व्युत्तेन etc. *Ibid.* xiv. 183-191.

3. पूर्वाङ्ग एव सल्कातास्तुरगाधिकदा वैश्वाभिः सह परिचारिकानुगता गच्छ युद्धसिक्तीं च यावां सदैवानुभूय ताङ्क ट्लावकसेषयुद्धायैतैः प्रेक्षाभिरनुकूलै च चेष्टितैः कालं गमयित्वाऽपराह्णं गृहीतपदुदानोपभोगचिन्मासैवं प्रव्याव्रजेयुः । एतेव रचितोऽप्तुष्टोऽकानां थीर्म् जलकीडावसंगं व्याल्यातम् ।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 53 (sutras 40-41).

garden outside the city was very popular in the days of Vātsyāyana who again and again speaks of it. His description of *udyānayātrā* agrees in every particular with that given in *mṛcchakatīka*, the only difference being that in the drama, Cārudatta goes out in a bullock-cart instead of on horseback. A nāgaraka's liberality was often tested by his readiness to spend on these garden picnics and dramatic performances. A king who has many wives is advised by Vātsyāyana to please every one of them by such shows and garden-parties.<sup>1</sup> Unmarried girls, and even married women, sometimes went to these picnics; a virgin on her way to a garden-party was sometimes snatched away from her friends and guardians for the purposes of marriage.<sup>2</sup> Ladies perhaps went on such picnics in parties of their own sex, because Vātsyāyana says that *udyāna-yātrās* afforded opportunities for meeting and making offers of love to them.<sup>3</sup> But picnics arranged by married women appear to be rather rare. It was only a *punarbhū*, that is, a widow who had attached herself to a second husband, that induced her adopted lover to institute these picnics and convivial assemblies at which she herself took part.<sup>4</sup>

### SAMASYĀ-KRIDĀ

Last of all we come to the sports that Vātsyāyana calls *samasyā-kridā* or *sambhūya-kridā*, that is social diversions in which a number of persons took part. He says that they varied with each country and province. Of about a score of them he has given only the names from which their character may sometimes be surmised. Some of them are well-known

1 प्रीचीदानन्दाग्रीकः ।—Ibid, p. 253. (*sūtra* 50); उद्यानगमनैः—एकैकासनुरक्षयेत् ।—Ibid, p. 245 (*sūtra* 89).

2 यामान्तरस्त्वान् वा गच्छन्ती विदिवा सुसंभृतसहायी नायकसहा रक्षिणी विचास्य हला वा कम्याम-पहरेदिति विवाहयोगः ।—Ibid, p. 222 (*sūtra* 27).

3 Ibid, p. 258 (*sūtra* 6); also p. 274. (*sūtra* 41).

4 Ibid, p. 239 (*sūtra* 44); also p. 240 (*sūtra* 59).

up to the present day, at least in parts of India, such as *Kaumudi-jāgaru*, in which the whole night of the full moon in the month of Āśvina is passed without sleep by playing at dice or similar other amusements, and the *Holākā* or *Holi* on the day of the vernal full moon in the month of Phālguna; such is also the *Ālola-caturthī* or *Hindoletsava* in the month of Śrāvaṇa. The *Hallisaka*, accompanied by dancing and music and supposed to be similar to the *Rāsotsava* described in the *Bhāgavata-Purāṇa*, is referred to by Vātsyāyana and a form of it is still current in Kāthiāwād. The festival of *Surasantaka* reminds us of the *Dule-vasayitiyā* of the Sita-benga Cave-Inscription which tells us that at this "swing-festival of the vernal full-moon, frolic and music abound and people tie around their necks garlands thick with jasmine flowers."<sup>1</sup> We are also reminded of the *Kāma-devānuyādā* of Bhāsa's *Cārudatta* (Act I) and of the *Madanodyāna yātrā* of Bhavabhūti's *Mālati-Mādhava* (Act I). It appears that persons of both sexes took part in many of these festivities. At such festivals as *Kaumudi-jāgara*, *Surasantaka* and *Aṣṭamī Candraka*, the women of the cities and towns entered the harem of the king and sported with the royal ladies there.<sup>2</sup>

### SPORTS OF GIRLS

Some of the sports of girls have been described by Vātsyāyana, as well as some of their playthings. The girls took delight in making garlands of flowers, building small houses of earth, of wood, playing with dolls, or in cooking imaginary food with such materials as earth etc. They sometimes played games of chance with dice or cards, or other games

<sup>1</sup> Dr. T. Bloch, "Rāmgarh Cave Inscriptions," *Report of the Arch. Surv. of India* (1903-1904), pp. 124-25.

<sup>2</sup> See *Kāmasūtra*, p. 54 (*sūtra* 42) and p. 283 (*sūtra* 11); for *Hallisaka* cf. लहोसकलीङ्गकीर्णयनीन्द्वारासहैः ।—p. 175 (*sūtra* 25) and see *East and West*, I, pp. 748ff. (May, 1902).

like "odd and even," the game of "close fists" and so on; or they might play the game of finding out the middle finger or the sport with six pebbles; sometimes a number of girls played together at games involving some exercise of the limbs (*Kṣveditakāni*) such as hide and seek, spinning round holding each other's out-stretched arms, blindman's buff, games with salt or heaps of wheat.<sup>1</sup> We see from this list that many of these sports and games are much the same as those in vogue at the present day among Indian girls and boys.

The games and festivities of the *nagaraka* are, as we see from the description given above, the diversions of a seeker after pleasure and amusement—of one that had plenty of leisure to enjoy and an ample fortune to provide the means of enjoyment. Among manly sports, wrestling matches were known to *Vātsyāyana*, but the *nagaraka* appears to have been rather a spectator at these games than one who took an active part in them; the *Kāmasūtra* also speaks of hunting as a pastime that becomes a source of pleasure by practice, when one has acquired some skill in it and this seems to be the one manly sport that the *nagaraka* knows of.<sup>2</sup>

1. *Kāmasūtra*, p. 201 (*sūtras* 5-7).

2. मत्तदीर्घुङ्गा—*Ibid*, p. 84 (*sūtra* 57); प्रीति: साम्यादिकी चेता चगादिषु चर्मैसु ।—*Ibid*, p. 90 (*sūtra* 2).

## THE POSITION OF WOMEN

### THE NĀGARAKA'S WIFE

While the life of a *nāgaraka* has been painted by Vātsyāyana as a round of pleasures, that of his wife presents a striking contrast and is a round of duties. The picture presented by him of a wife is in no way inferior to the ideal held up in the *Dharmasāstras* and in many respects he gives greater details.<sup>1</sup> She attends on her husband with all the love and devotion a devotee shows to the deity he worships. She ministers to his personal needs, looks after his food and drink, as well as his toilet and his amusements; she tries to appreciate his likes and dislikes, welcomes his friends with proper presents, respects and loves his parents and relatives and is liberal to his servants; when she finds that he is coming home, she hastens to meet him and waits upon him herself; in his games and sports she follows him; even when offended, she does not speak too bitterly to him. She may attend a festive assembly only with his permission and in the company of her friends. She does not even give away anything without his knowledge. She should do nothing that might rouse his suspicion against her fidelity; she should avoid the company of women of questionable character such as female ascetics, actresses,

<sup>1</sup> For the section of the *Kāmasūtra* dealing with the character of the virtuous wife see pp. 224-46. This section has not been dealt with here in detail as the whole of it has been translated by Prof. P. Peterson in his paper on "Vātsyāyana on the Duties of a Hindu Wife," read before the Anthropological Society of Bombay (16th December, 1891) and published in the *Journal of the Anthro. Soc. of Bom.* 1892, pp. 459-66. The same learned Professor has written upon "Courtship in Ancient India," as given in the section of the *Kāmasūtra* dealing with it (*Jour. Bom. Br. R.A.S.* xviii), and hence, we have omitted a consideration of that section including the rules of marriage.

fortune-tellers, or women given to the practice of black art (*mūlakārikā*), nor should she loiter about in solitary parts of the house. She might take lessons in the *Kāmasūtra* or in the subsidiary arts, if her husband so wishes, and he may occasionally himself give these lessons.<sup>1</sup> One is here reminded of Bhāsa's *Udayana* who calls his beloved queen "his dear disciple,"<sup>2</sup> and of the beautiful line of Kālidāsa (with whom our author has so many points of contact) where Aja mourns the loss of Indumati, his "beloved pupil in the fine arts."<sup>3</sup>

There is an atmosphere of control and restraint about her. In her talk she is moderate and never speaks or laughs aloud ; she does not return an answer when reprimed by her husband's parents. She does not give herself airs when she enjoys great good fortune. In her dress she practises moderation : when going out on festive occasions, she wears a few ornaments and only a few garments of fine and soft texture, uses perfumes and ointments very moderately and adorns herself only with white flowers. But when she is going to meet her husband, she takes the greatest care with her toilet ; then she makes herself tidy, sweet and clean, she puts on many ornaments, wears flowers of various hues and smells, uses perfumes and in every way makes herself attractive. Flowers were worn in garlands hanging from the neck (*sraj*), or in chaplets (*āpiḍa*) on the head, or were simply put in the hair,<sup>4</sup> or in elaborate ornaments for the ears (*karnapūra* or *karnapatra*). Another item of a woman's toilet was the paint or the dots and patches on the forehead and cheeks,

1 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 28 (*sūtras* 2 and 3) ; p. 197 (*sūtra* 36), and चतुष्पद्धति विवरणम् । p. 310 (*sūtra* 9).

2 Bhāsa's *Svapnavāsavadattam*, Act V, ता प्रिये, ता रियरिये etc.

3 प्रियशिरा लक्षिते वसाविष्टे ।—*Raghuvamśa*, viii. 57.

4 प्रकौर्यमानकैश्चक्षुमा—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 152 (*sūtra* 3) ; कैश्चु त्रुम्यमासैः Bhāsa, *Cārudatta*, Act I.

put on in various designs (*viśeṣaka*). Sometimes leaves of such plants as *tamāla* were used with it, as we find in the *Saundarananda-Kāvya*.<sup>1</sup> Vatsyāyana advises a wife never to present herself before her husband without some ornaments on her person even when alone with him.<sup>2</sup> This idea is found in Indian literature as early as the time of Yāska, who says, "to the man who understands her meaning, the Veda shows herself as a loving wife shows herself to her husband in all her rich apparel." As Yāska here is quoting a verse of the *Rgveda* where it occurs at least four times, the idea belongs to the very earliest period of Indian thought.<sup>3</sup> But when the husband is away from home the wife goes, as it were, into mourning; she puts away all her ornaments and finery with the exception of those that mark her married condition, such as the bangles of shells, only one on each wrist.<sup>4</sup> At that time she also practises fasts and austerities in honour of the gods and does not go to visit even the near relatives except in very urgent cases when they are in some danger, or when there are some festivities there, and even then, she must not change her quiet dress indicating the separation (*pravāsa-veṣa*); and she should never go there but in the company of her husband's people and must not stay there long. When the husband returns home she goes to meet him as she is, then she worships the gods, specially Kāma-deva, the god of love, and offers gifts of food to men and birds.

1. *Kāmasūtra*, p. 124 (*sūtra* 19); p. 206 (*sūtra* 32); also *Saundarananda Kāvya*, chap. iv.

2. नायकस्त च न विभुतामूर्खण विजये संदर्भने तिष्ठेतु ।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 226 (*sūtra* 13)

3. Quoted by Prof. Peterson in *Journal of the Anth. Soc. of Bom.*, 1891, p. 463. The Vedic passage is जायिव पद्म उशती सुवासा: *Rv.* i. 124. 7; see also iv. 3. 2; x. 71. 4 and x. 91. 13. Cf. also जाया पतिसिव वासा *Av.* xviii. 2. 51.

4. *Kāmasūtra*, p. 231 (*sūtra* 43), also एक शहवलय वा धारयेत्, pp. 315-16 (*sūtra* 44).

Ordinarily also it is the wife who looks after the performance of the daily worship of gods at the household temple and the due performance of rites and the offering of gifts at the three fixed periods in the day—morning, mid-day and evening. She takes upon herself the observance of the vows and fasts that fall to the share of her husband. Sometimes the lady vowed gifts and offerings to the gods, and when her lord acquired some wealth, or obtained success in any venture, or regained his health after some illness, she carried out her vow.<sup>1</sup> To institute the worship of some deity was one of the dear desires of the women.<sup>2</sup> The qualities enumerated by Śuddhodana as requisite for a bride for the young Siddhārtha<sup>3</sup> are very much the same as those in the picture given above by Vātsyāyana of a virtuous and devoted wife.

With the permission of her husband the wife takes upon herself the whole care and management of the family. She prepares a budget for the whole year and regulates the expenditure in proportion with the annual income. She must also know how to keep the daily accounts and total up the daily receipts and expenditure ; Manu also lays down that the husband should appoint the wife to receive and spend the wealth, by keeping accounts, as Medhātithi explains.<sup>4</sup> When the husband is inclined to spend beyond his means, or to run into improper expenditure, she remonstrates with him in secret. She lays in a stock of all articles necessary for consumption and replenishes her stores at the proper season. She knows how to calculate and pay the wages and

1 तस्मार्थादिगमेऽभिप्रैतसिद्धौ शरीरोपचये वा पूर्वसभावित इष्टदेवतोपचारः ।—Ibid, p. 311 (sūtra 20).

2 देवतानां पूर्णोपचारप्रवृत्तम् ।—Ibid, p. 340 (sūtra 25).

3 *Lalita-vistara*, chap. xii, 138ff.

4 सांप्रतस्मिन्को आद्यं संख्यात् तदनुरूपं व्ययं कुर्यात् । दैवसिकाव्ययपिष्ठीकारव्यभिति च विद्यात्—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 229 (sūtras 32-33) ; अयस्य संख्ये चैता व्यये चैव वियोजयेत् ।—*Manu* x. 11 where Medhātithi explains संख्या, संख्यादिना परिच्छिद्य रक्षार्थं वेष्यनि विधातम् ।

salaries of the servants, has to look after agriculture and cattle, and also to take care of the animals and birds kept for sport by the master of the house. We have seen that the garden also is a special charge of the lady of the house. When the husband is absent from home she also looks after his affairs and tries to administer them carefully so that they may not suffer by his absence ; on such occasions she endeavours to minimise the expenditure to the best of her power and to increase the resources of the family by sales and purchases carried on through trusty servants. She has to attend to the kitchen, and besides, she employs her leisure in spinning cotton and also in doing some weaving.

#### POOR WOMEN

Many of the poorer women,—widows, helpless women, or those who had adopted the ascetic's vow (*pravrajitā*), earned a living by spinning and weaving as at the time of Kautilya, and got their wages from a government officer, the *Sūtrādhyakṣa*, "the Superintendent of Yarn," and the sales and purchases were made with the *Panyādhyakṣa*, "the Superintendent of Manufactures." In the villages, the peasant women did various kinds of work under the control of the government officer (*Āyuktaku*) in charge of the village or the headman who lived upon a share of the agricultural produce. Under his orders these women perform unpaid work (*visti*) for him, they fill up his granaries, take things in or out of his house, clean and decorate his residence, or work in his fields ; they also take from him cotton, wool, flax or hemp for spinning yarn and the bark of trees, or thread, for preparing wearing apparel ; moreover, they made with him transactions of sale, purchase or exchange of various articles. Similarly the women in dairy settlements (*vrajas*) transacted business with the *gavādhyakṣa*, "the Superintendent of Cattle."<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 282-83 (*sūtras* 5-10).

## THE JOINT-FAMILY

The joint family system seems to have obtained in Vātsyāyana's age. The wife of the householder has to wait upon his parents and to obey them implicitly as we have already seen, and moreover, she has to show proper regard to all senior relations (*gurus*) and to his sisters as well as to their husbands. But nowhere are her duties to his brothers mentioned, though a woman with many younger brothers of her husband is referred to in one place<sup>1</sup> showing probably that sometimes the brothers lived together, but more often they established separate households when they got married, as it was prescribed in some of the *Dharma-sāstras*, in Manu for example, that after the death of the parents the brothers might live jointly or they might separate for the sake of increasing the *dharma*, for, if they lived separate, their spiritual merit would increase and hence separation was sanctioned by *dharma*: the meaning is that if they lived apart "each of them had to kindle the sacred fire, to offer separately the *agnihotra*, to perform the five great sacrifices and so forth, and hence each gains merit separately." This principle had been recognised from very early times as we have it clearly laid down by *Gautama*, the author of the earliest of the extant *Dharmasūtras*.<sup>2</sup>

## POLYGAMY

Polygamy appears to have been prevalent in Vātsyāyana's days among the wealthy. Kings generally considered it a privilege to have a crowded harem, a harem "with a thousand spouses" is spoken of by Vātsyāyana.<sup>3</sup> This is in line with what

1 व्येष्ठमार्या वदुदेवतिका—*Ibid.*, p. 254 (*sūtra* 52).

2 Note by Prof. Bühler on *Manu* ix. 111, *S.B.E.* xxv, p. 347. Cf. also सर्वे वा पूर्वजस्ते तरात् विभवात् पितृवत् । विभागे तु चर्चाहृषिः ।—*Gautama*, xxviii. 3 and 4.

3 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 41 (*sūtra* 22); also pp. 289-98.

the *Lalita-vistara* says about Māyādevī that she was the best and greatest of the thousands of women of Suddhodana. The *Buddhacarita* mentions the same fact though not in such extravagant terms.<sup>1</sup> Princes, high officials and the rich also married more than one wife. Vātsyāyana says that the wealthy people had generally a plurality of spouses who, outwardly no doubt, appeared to enjoy many objects of pleasure, but in reality, were very miserable indeed, as the husband was but one and the claimants to his affection were many; and he gives the sage advice that it is better to have a poor husband even though he may not have many qualities to recommend him than to have a clever man whose favours have to be shared with many.<sup>2</sup> A single wife for a wealthy man, however, was not unknown: we read in Vātsyāyana of a *nāgaraka* who may be devoted to one wife (*ekacārin*).<sup>3</sup> Prince Nanda of the *Saundarananda-Kāvya* was such a person. The majority of the people appeared to have only one wife; but if she had no child, or if she bore only daughters, and the continuity of the family was in danger, then the husband might marry again. In case of barrenness, Vātsyāyana counsels the wife herself to induce the husband to marry again and look upon the newly married bride as a younger sister.<sup>4</sup> He advises a man with many wives not to be partial, neither to show any disregard towards any one in particular, nor to allow any offence on the part of any one of them to pass unnoticed.<sup>5</sup>

#### ANTAHPURA

We have already seen that every house had an *antahpura*, or inner suite of apartments where the ladies resided in seclusion, guarded against intrusion from any stranger; not even

<sup>1</sup> शुद्धोदनस्य प्रमदा प्रधाना नारीसहस्रेष्ठ सायमासा—*Lalita-vistara* (ed. by Lefmann) 328. समयदेवीनिवासंयदेवी वभूव सायापत्रिष्य भावा।—*Buddhacarita*, i. 15.

<sup>2</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, p. 217 (*sūtras* 55, 56).

<sup>3</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 55 (*sūtra* 43).

<sup>5</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 245 (*sūtras* 85-89).

<sup>4</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 233-4 (*sūtras* 1-5).

women except those of approved character, were admitted within.<sup>1</sup> Bhāsa's *Vasantasenā* complains that she had the misfortune of not being entitled to enter into the inner courtyard of Cārudatta's house.<sup>2</sup> It was not considered decent for the wife of a *nāgaraka* to stand at the door and look out or to observe people in the street from her windows ; even when she hastens to meet her husband coming home, she does not go out into the street or to the door but waits for him inside the house.<sup>3</sup> Nevertheless, on the occasion of religious festivities and processions, she could accompany the images of the gods with the permission of her husband. The inability of women to protect themselves against temptations as compared with men, is recognised by Vātsyāyana and he like Manu, condemns the absence of a restraining guardian (*nirankuśatva*) for a woman.<sup>4</sup>

The kings having a large number of wives took greater care than the ordinary *nāgaraka* in confining them in seraglios guarded by officers of proved honesty and purity. No man was allowed to enter into the royal harem except relatives and servants and in some provinces, artisans ; Brāhmaṇas were allowed to get into the harem for supplying flowers to the ladies, with whom they conversed separated by a screen. There were in<sup>o</sup> the harem female officers, the *kañcukiyā* and the *mahattarikā* who carried presents of garlands, perfumes and garments from the ladies to the king who also sent gifts in return. In the afternoon, the king paid a visit to the harem and met all the ladies assembled together and con-

1 Ibid, p. 244 (*sūtra* 83).

2 अभावपौ अहं अवभन्नरप्यविस्मयः ।—Bhāsa, (Trivandrum Sanskrit series), Act I, p. 26.

3 *Kūmasūtra*, p. 227 (*sūtra* 22) ; and p. 226 (*sūtra* 12) ; also दारदेशावस्थायनी प्राप्तादादाज्ञामार्गं वस्त्रोक्तिनी ।—p. 254 (*sūtra* 52).

4 Ibid, p. 249 (*sūtras* 10 and 13) ; also pp. 296-97 (*sūtras* 43-52) ; cf. *Manu*, v. 147-149 and ix. 2 and 3.

versed with them in accordance with their rank and position.<sup>1</sup>

### EDUCATION OF WOMEN

The fact that the mistress of the house was expected to keep the daily accounts, to prepare the annual budget of receipts and expenditure, and supervise in general over the purse, proves, beyond a doubt, that women ordinarily were literate. Besides, from what Vātsyāyana says, it is apparent that an ordinary woman could receive and reply to love letters smuggled into ear ornaments, chaplets or garlands made of flowers carried by female messengers (*patrahāridūti*). Such love letters not infrequently contained verses and songs having special reference to the beloved and replies were obtained from her.<sup>2</sup> Unless women had some education, this would be without meaning.

Higher education (*sāstragrahanā*), however, was not so common among them, as Vātsyāyana himself says that women did not ordinarily get any education in the *sāstras*, but our author avers that the daughters of kings and nobles, as also the *ganikās*, were highly educated and "had their intelligence trained and sharpened by the *sāstras*," and he advises that a woman might learn either the whole or a part of the work (*sāstra*) composed by himself from a person who by character and attainments could be trusted.<sup>3</sup> The sixty-four subsidiary sciences that had to be studied along with the *Kāmasūtra*, included many that required, as we have seen, no inconsiderable proficiency in *belles lettres*, in the humanities in general. Such accomplishments as extempore compo-

1 Ibid, pp. 289-298 and pp. 242-44.

2 Ibid, p. 274 (*sūtras* 38-40); p. 276 (*sūtra* 51) : p. 279 (*sūtra* 60); also यत् संपादोऽस्माकाद्...धार्याचा गीतवस्त्राकारां...च निधानम् । प्रत्यक्षर् तथा दर्श प्रपञ्चे ते ।—p. 292, (*sūtras* 20, 21).

3 Ibid, pp. 28-30.

sition of verses (*mānasi-kāvyakriyā*) and the completion of fragmentary verses (*kāvyasamasyāpūrṇam*) required a ready facility in versification that could be acquired only by a highly educated girl ; and such sports as *pratimālā* required the memorising of a large mass of verses and good literature. In Vātsyāyana's opinion a knowledge of the *Kāmasūtra* with its subsidiary sciences would be useful to all women, both high and low, rich and poor. A poor woman who on account of the absence of her husband, finds herself in great distress and difficulty, might earn a decent living even in a foreign country by means of the knowledge of these sciences. A woman whose husband has been away from home without making provision for her, is advised by Manu also to live by the arts, by such *śilpas* as have nothing reprehensible in them. On the other hand, Vātsyāyana affirms that, a daughter of wealthy parents, if accomplished in the arts, might win the affection of her husband even if he happens to have a large number of wives. We see, moreover, from Vātsyāyana's work, as well as from contemporary literature, that a knowledge of the arts was considered necessary for all women.<sup>1</sup> The bride for Prince Siddhārtha was required, according to his father, to be "versed in the sacred literature (*sāstra*) and skilled in the arts, even like a *Ganikā*."<sup>2</sup> The *caramabuddha* could be born only of a mother "versed in many sciences," and Māyādevī satisfied this requirement ; besides, she was well skilled in the arts.<sup>3</sup>

### WIDOW RE-MARRIAGE

The position of a widow who wished for a second husband, has been clearly defined by Vātsyāyana. There was no regular marriage for a widow ; but if a woman who had lost

1 Ibid, pp. 32-41, cf. प्रोपितैलविधायैव जीविष्विष्वैरमहितैः—*Manu*, ix, 75.

2 शास्त्रे विद्यज्ञ कृष्णा गणिका यथैव—*Lalitavistara* (ed. by Lefmann), xii.

3 वद श्रुतायाः परिज्ञितायाः ।—Ibid, iii, 25, कलायित्रज्ञाणा ।—iii, 27.

her husband, was of weak character and was unable to restrain her desires, she might ally herself for a second time to a man who was a seeker after pleasures (*bhogin*) and was desirable on account of his excellent qualities as a lover, and such a woman was called a *punarbhū*. Vātsyāyana quotes the opinions of several teachers as to how far, in the selection of her second master, the *punarbhū* should be swayed by the excellence of the qualities of the man of her choice or by the chances of participating in the joys of life, and he concludes that in his opinion it was best for her to follow the natural inclinations of her own heart. The connection with her was of a loose character and she enjoyed a degree of independence, unknown to the wife wedded according to sacramental rites. When the *punarbhū* seeks her lover's house, she assumes the rôle of a mistress, patronises his wives, is generous to his servants and treats his friends with familiarity ; she chides the lover herself if he gives any cause for quarrel. She shows greater knowledge of the arts than his wedded wives and seeks to please the lover with the sixty-four *Kāmakalās*. She takes part in sports and festivities, drinking parties, garden picnics, and other games and amusements. She might leave her lover (*nāyaka*), but if she did so of her own accord, she had to restore to him all presents given by him, except the tokens of love, mutually exchanged between them ; if she is driven out, she does not give back any thing.<sup>1</sup>

The position of the *punarbhū* is therefore quite distinct from that of the wedded wife who participated with her husband in all religious observances and had to live with decency in the *antahpura* ; the position of the *punarbhū* approaches nearer to that of a mistress than that of a wedded

<sup>1</sup> *Kamasūtra*, pp. 238-40 (*sūtras* 39-59). विष्वा विनिष्टयदोषादातुरा भौमिन् गुणसंपत्त च या पुनर्विदेत सा पुनर्भूः (*sūtra* 39) ; दोषादिनी सा किञ्चान्नन्यं पुनर्विदेत (*sūtra* 41) ; सा ग्रन्थविष्ट्वरेव तस्य भवनमाप्युच्चात् (*sūtra* 48) ; समाजापानकीयानयादाविष्ट्वरसीकाता चेति पुनर्सुहृत्तम् (*sūtra* 59), etc.

wife. In the king's harem where there were separate quarters and suites of chambers for the various types of women, the *punarbhūs* occupied a position midway between the *devīs* or queens who were quartered in the innermost apartments, and the *gopikās* and actresses in the outermost, and this exactly indicates also the position occupied by them in society. Vātsyāyana indicates this in another place where he places the *punarbhū* between the virgin (*kanyā*) and the courtesan (*vesyā*)<sup>1</sup> and says that the establishment of sexual relations with either the courtesans or the *punarbhūs* was not considered as right, neither was it absolutely condemned, because pleasure was the guiding motive in all such connections.<sup>2</sup> It is clear that in Vātsyāyana's opinion there could not be any second marriage of the widow. Manu, whose code must have received its present form about that time, declares in unmistakable terms that in the sacred texts concerning marriage, the re-marriage of widows was nowhere prescribed.<sup>3</sup> Vātsyāyana's attitude towards the question of widow-remarriage shows that in his days, public opinion allowed the widow to live with the man of her choice as his mistress, just as public opinion was not particularly nice or fastidious about making love to courtesans, but she could never receive the same regard, nor acquire the same position, as the married wife.

About the question of marriage in general, Vātsyāyana gives it as his considered opinion that for a man of any of the four *varṇas* or castes, *kāma* or desire should be provided its scope in the acceptance, according to the prescriptions of the holy writ, of a maiden who belongs to the same caste as himself and who had no contact with any one before, and this, he says, leads to progeny and to fame and is also sanctioned by popular usage ; and again, he affirms, in another connection,

<sup>1</sup> Ibid, p. 243, (*sūtra* 78) ; and तत्र नायिकात्तिक्ष्मः, कथा पुनर्भू च—p. 60 (*sūtra* 4).

<sup>2</sup> वैश्यासु पुनर्भू च न शिष्टो न प्रतिविष्टः सुखार्थलात् ।—Ibid, p. 59 (*sūtra* 3).

<sup>3</sup> न विवाहविधातुकं विधवावेदनं पुनः ।—Manu, ix. 65.

that when a maiden of the same caste, not given to any one before, is married in accordance with the prescriptions of the holy writ, then one secures *dharma* and *artha*, offspring, high connection, an increase of friends and partisans, and also genuine, untarnished love. He further adds definitely that the contrary procedure of marrying girls of higher castes or of those who had previously been accepted by others, was absolutely prohibited, but that public opinion was indifferent with regard to connection with women of the lower castes (if not actually outside the pale of Aryāit society), as also with widows and courtesans, for such relations were not considered as amounting to marriage at all, but entered into merely for pleasure for its own sake.<sup>1</sup>

### ANUMARANA

Vātsyāyana once refers to the *anumarana*<sup>2</sup> of a woman upon the death of her lover; perhaps it has a reference to the practice of *sahamarana* or dying with the husband, that is, burning herself on the same funeral pyre, but we cannot be sure about it upon such meagre evidence.

### FEMALE ASCETICS

Some women also took the monastic vow like men and lived upon the charity of the people. Nuns of the three main religions of India at that time are referred to in the *Kāmasūtra*. We have the Buddhist nun *śramaṇā*, and her Jaina sister, *kṣapāṇā* or *kṣapāṇikā*; and associated with them we find the *tāpasi* whom I take to be the woman who belonging to the Brahmanic faith, has renounced the world. Besides, we read of women who had their heads shaven (*mundāb*). All of them are generally spoken of as *pravrajitās* or *bhikṣukis*, i.e., female ascetics or mendicants. It appears, from

<sup>1</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, p. 59 (*sūtras* 1-3); and p. 184 (*sūtra* 1).

<sup>2</sup> अनुमारणं चातुर्थं व्याप्तं.—*Ibid.*, p. 316 (*sūtra* 53).

what Vātsyāyana says, that these female mendicant orders did not enjoy a high reputation for morality: they are included among those who are declared to be company unfit for decent married ladies.<sup>1</sup> Some of the mendicant women were proficient in the arts and their help was often sought by the *nāgaraka* in affairs of love; the house of the *bhikṣuki* often formed the rendezvous for lovers; she was often employed to carry messages of love and was regarded as a go-between who could easily create confidence and succeed in her mission.<sup>2</sup> Vātsyāyana, however, positively asserts that the love of the female ascetic was never to be sought for by a *nāgaraka*, though a former teacher had expressed a contrary view.<sup>3</sup> All this does not imply that female ascetics were in general considered as depraved but that some of them abused the confidence of the public and thus forfeited the respect with which they had previously been regarded, just like some of the male ascetics and mendicants who erred from the right path,<sup>4</sup> and we learn from Kauṭilya that the respect which the *parivrājikā* or *bhikṣuki* commanded in society was made use of in order to fish out political secrets.<sup>5</sup> In Bhavabhūti's *Mālatīmādhava* we find the *parivrājikā*, Kāṇandakī, represented as a highly respectable lady who took great interest in the love affair between the hero and the heroine and worked hard for its fruition. This drama is an illustration, as it were, of the *Kāmasūtra*, and Bhavabhūti in this drama shows himself very well-versed in Vātsyāyana's writings.<sup>6</sup>

1 भिक्षुक यजमानाद्यपयाकुलटाकुरुक्षेत्रादिकोमुलकारिकाभिन्नं संस्कृतं।—Ibid, p. 225 (*sūtra* 9); सर्वैःभिक्षुकीयपरिकालापस्मैभवनेषु सुखीपापः (समाप्तः)।—p. 274 (*sūtra* 42), etc.

2 Ibid, p. 57 (*sūtra* 48); p. 274 (*sūtra* 42); p. 364 (*sūtra* 15); p. 285 (*sūtra* 25); and p. 280 (*sūtra* 62).

3 Ibid, p. 65 (*sūtra* 23); p. 67 (*sūtra* 32).

4 *Bhikṣukāḥ*, ibid, p. 300 (*sūtra* 9); *līgin*, p. 301 (*sūtra* 10), p. 351 (*sūtra* 28).

5 Kauṭilya, *Arthashastra*, i, chaps. 11 and 12.

6 Cf. श्रीहास्त्रादीपित्रकामसूत्रम्।—*Mālatīmādhava*, Prologue, Act i.

## ARTS AND CRAFTS

The age of Vātsyāyana being characterised by very refined tastes and aesthetic perceptions, as we have seen above, there was joy and consequently beauty in life, and it was necessarily an age when the arts flourished and the crafts prospered. Vātsyāyana's *nāgaraka* is a man of varied culture and from the picture that we have obtained of his life and surrounding, of his home and friends, and of his sports and amusements, there can be no doubt that he was a great patron of the arts; in fact, it is evident that every one who aspired to be a member of cultured society, had to acquire some proficiency in poetry and music, painting and sculpture and to possess some knowledge of a host of minor arts, the twice sixty-four *kalās*<sup>1</sup> enumerated by our author. This knowledge of the arts was evidently an essential part of his education and without this modicum of practical acquaintance with them he would not be respected, as Vātsyāyana says, in the assemblies of the cultured and educated people.<sup>2</sup> The ideal *nāgaraka*, according to Vātsyāyana, was he who possessed, in addition to a healthy physique, good birth and independent means of livelihood, a knowledge of the various arts, who was learned and eloquent and was moreover, a poet, well skilled in telling stories, who was fond of all the literary and artistic competitions and festivities including *gosthis* and dramatic performances and above all, a person whose character was marked by largeness of heart and liberality, by affection and love. Skill in the sixty-four arts subsidiary to

<sup>1</sup> The sixty-four *śilpa-kalās* and the sixty-four *pāncalikā* or *sāmprayogika-kalās* enumerated in the *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 92-183. The former are called *karma-kalās* and the latter *kāma-kalās* in the *Lalitavistara* (Chaps. xii and xxi).

<sup>2</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, p. 182 (*sūtras* 50-51), also p. 41 (*sūtras* 24-25).

the *Kāmasūtra* as well as a knowledge of the *Sūtras* themselves was an essential part of the qualification of every cultured man and woman.<sup>1</sup> To win a girl in marriage called for an exercise of many of the arts. A maiden had to be propitiated by rare and curious objects of art, by nicely recited romances and by sweet songs; if she showed a partiality for feats of "magic," her favour was to be won by performing various tricks of legerdemain; if she manifested a curiosity for the arts (*kalās*), her lover must demonstrate before her his skill in them; the art of gathering flowers in bouquets, or weaving them into chaplets and garlands was specially to be cultivated.<sup>2</sup> Tournaments in which a charming and rarely accomplished girl like Gopā was the prize of the victor (*jaya-patākā*),<sup>3</sup> appear to have been held in cities ruled by a semi-republican government like that of the Sākyakula. If a man was uncultured and ignorant of the arts it would be a source of great sorrow to his wife who, Vātsyāyana suggests, might herself be more proficient in them than he.<sup>4</sup> In the *Lalitavistara* we find that unless Siddhārtha showed his skill in some of the arts (*śilpas*), Daṇḍapāṇi Sākyā refused to give his girl in marriage to him, prince though he was.<sup>5</sup> It may easily be imagined that art in all its forms was likely to develop and prosper in a society where men and women were inspired by such ideals, and that at the same time the sciences that analysed and minis-

1 विद्यान् कविराज्यानकृत्यालो वाम्मी विविधशिल्पाद्यो भवोद्याहस्यानी निष्ववस्त्वो घटांगोदीपि लक्षणक् समाजसम्बन्धः क्वाडनशैलो नीरजोऽव्याघातरीरः प्राणवानमदापः etc. इति नायकगुणाः—p. 302 (*sūtra* 12); also कामसूक्ते कौशलं तद्विविद्यासु चेति साधारणगुणाः।—p. 303 (*sūtra* 14).

2 *Ibid*, pp. 202-203 (*sūtras* 11-18).

3 दण्डपाणी शाकाश्वस्य दुष्टिता गोपा नाम शाकाक्षात् अयपताका स्थापिताऽभृत्—*Lalita-vistara*, xii, 144.

4 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 254 (*sūtra* 52).

5 अस्याक्षात् शुक्लधर्मः शिल्पज्ञस्य कामा दातव्या नाशिल्पज्ञस्य ति। कुमारस न शिल्पज्ञ.....तत् कथमशिल्पज्ञाता इद्वितरं दात्याति।—*Lalitavistara*, xii, 143.

tered to the manifold forms of artistic expression of this highly intellectual and cultured community also grew and were assiduously pursued. Not only erotics, to which Vātsyāyana devoted himself, but also the sciences of aesthetics and poetics received a great impetus during this period. Bharata's *Nātyaśāstra* appears to be a product of this age of aesthetic culture which reached its culmination in the great Kālidāsa, the most careful student of Bharata and Vātsyāyana.

### LITERARY ART

We have already had evidence of the *nāgaraka*'s good taste in house-building and architecture and also of his fondness for poetry and romance. He always had a poetical work on a table in his room, and we have seen from his skill at the *gosthis* where *kāvya-samasyās* or competitions in poetic skill were held every evening, that readiness in versification and a wide reading of poetical literature in general, formed the essential accomplishment of every one of the class to which he belonged. While wooing the maiden of his choice, he was expected to recite sweetly agreeable stories that would just apply to his case, or the romances of *Sakuntalā* and *Ārimāraka* and of the heroes and heroines of literature who had prospered in their loves. One skilled in reciting these stories and romances had, according to Vātsyāyana, the best chance of success in love-making.<sup>1</sup>

### PAINTING

The Pictorial art, *ālekhyaṁ*, was one of the foremost of the sixty-four *kalās* cultivated during this period. Every cultured man had in his house a drawing board, *citraphalaka*, and a vessel (*saṁudgaka*) for holding brushes and other requisites of painting.<sup>2</sup> Pictures, *citrakarma*, appear to have

1 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 203 (*sūtra* 17); p. 218 (*sūtra* 5); p. 252 (*sūtra* 50); p. 269 (*sūtra* 2); p. 271 (*sūtra* 14); p. 302 (*sūtra* 12).

2 *Ibid.*, p. 32 and p. 44 (*sūtra* 10).

been drawn, as the commentator of *Vātsyāyana* explains, both on the walls (*bhitti*) as well as on panels or boards (*phalaka*); *Vātsyāyana* advises a lover who wants to attract the attention of the lady whose charms have captivated him, to put in places frequented by her, paintings (probably representing himself) done on panels<sup>1</sup>; in another place we read of a kiss imprinted on a picture (*citrakarma*),<sup>2</sup> most probably on a wall. For *citrakarma* or painting, the surface of the wall appears to have been most ordinarily used in ancient India, as appears from a passage in the *Mudrārākṣasa* where the futility of the earnest efforts of a statesman is compared to "the composition of a picture (*citrakarma*) without the wall."<sup>3</sup> The same idea is found in the *Lalitavistara* where the daughters of Māra declare that it was easier to paint pictures on the sky than to tempt Bodhisattva.<sup>4</sup> Bharata clearly refers to fresco-painting by the phrase *citrakarma*; he says that the walls of the theatre-hall were to be decorated with *citrakarma* after they had been carefully plastered, coated with lime and nicely polished, the paintings consisting of the representation of male and female figures, of creeper-patterns and a record of great deeds.<sup>5</sup> It is fortunate that in our country where we have so few pictorial records of the past, the caves at Ajanta have preserved a

1 यत संपातोऽस्यासत्र चित्रकर्मणः...निधानम्।—Ibid, p. 292 (*sūtra* 20).

2 Ibid, p. 111 (*sūtra* 31).

3 सैवैः मम चित्रकर्मरचना भित्ति विना वर्त्तते।—*Mudrārākṣasa*, Act ii.

4 शक्त तात अन्तरोर्धे लंख्यचित्र चित्रितुं, न वोधिसत्त्व शक्य तात बोधिमण्डि चालितुग्म।—*Lalitavistara*, xxi, 312.

5 भित्तिष्ठथ विलिप्तासु परिष्वटासु सर्वतः।

समाप्त जातशोभासु चित्रकर्म प्रयोजयेत्॥

चित्रकर्मस्थि चालित्याः पुरुषाः स्त्रीजनसत्या।

सदावभ्याव कर्त्तव्यायरितं चात्मभोगजम्॥

few frescoes, the solitary survivals of this age of prolific artistic production.

Vatsyayana speaks also of the *aklyinaka pali*<sup>1</sup> which is evidently a roll of canvas containing the representation of a short story in several scenes like the *gamyapata* which was spread by a spy of Cāṇakya before the people in Candanadāsa's house and was exhibited by him with songs;<sup>2</sup> we may add that the direct descendant of this *gamyapata* may still be seen in the villages of Bengal. Balls with various designs painted on them in a variety of colours, as also water jugs of various elegant shapes with many paintings, are mentioned by Vatsyayana as welcome presents to a maiden whose favours one is courting.<sup>3</sup> The *Indiranistara* mentions a similar plaything for children, viz., jugs beautifully painted on the outside but containing valueless things within.<sup>4</sup>

According to Vatsyayana a welcome object of presentation to maidens was a colour-box (*paliolikā*) containing the following colours:—*alaktaku* (the red dye obtained from lac), *manusīla* (red arsenic), *huritāla* (yellow orpiment), *hīngula* (vermillion) and *syāmuvarṇaka*; the last named appears to be a vegetable dye, black, blue or green because the word *syāmu* is used to signify all these colours. The commentator says that it means a powder used in painting, of *rājavarta*, a mineral substance.<sup>5</sup> A painter surrounded by many cups (*mallikas*) of wet colours is referred to in Bhāsa's Cārudatta.<sup>6</sup> Jayamāngala quotes a beautiful verse

1 *Kamasutra*, p. 269 (*sūtra* 2).

2 तस्मिं चमपदं पश्चात्तिष्ठ पौदावः गाहतम्।—*Mudrārākṣasa*, Act i.

3 कन्दकमनेकमत्तिविद्व संदर्शयेत्।—*Kamasutra*, p. 202 (*sūtra* 13). विविवाहति-  
संयुक्तानि जलभाजनानां दाने।—Ibid., p. 203 (*sūtra* 14).

4 इह ते आला रथ्यन्ते चित्तघटेचिवामीष्यपरिष्वेष्यविवाहः।—*Lalitavistara*, xv, 207.

5 पटीलिकानामलककमनः चित्ताल्लितालहितुलकम्बामवाँकादोनो दानः। *Kamasutra*, p. 203

6 चित्तघरो विष वहमङ्गपहि परिष्वेदो।—Bhāsa, *Cārudatta* (Trivandrum Sanskrit Series), Act ix, p. 7.

apparently from a *śilpaśāstra* about the six great requisites of painting, viz., "knowledge of appearances, correct perception, measure and structure of forms, action of feelings on forms, infusion of grace or artistic representation, similitude and artistic manner of using the brush and colours."<sup>1</sup> Bharata speaks of the pictorial representation of the feelings or rather sentiments, the *rāgas*, by different colours, the erotic or amatory sentiment is represented by the *śyāma* or dark colour spoken of above, the sentiment of mirth by white; the piteous sentiment is grey (*kapota*) and the choleric is red, the heroic is yellowish white (*gaura*) and the terrible, black; the repulsive is blue and the amazing, yellow.<sup>2</sup>

### SCULPTURE

Sculpture flourished as much as painting in the age of Vātsyāyana as is fully borne out by the numerous sculptural records that have come down to our time from that period. Vātsyāyana himself bears ample testimony to it: *tāksaṇa*, carving on wood or stone was one of the sixty-four arts and every *nāgaraka* had in his house implements for working at it; similarly in every house there was a lathe and other arrangements for turning which, likewise, had its place among the sixty-four kalās. Vātsyāyana does not expressly mention an image of a god, but from what he says

1

हपमेदाः प्रमाणानि भावतावस्थायोजनम् ।

सादृश्यं वर्णिकामङ्ग इति चित्रं वड़ङ्कमिति ॥

*Kāmasūtra* p. 33. The translation is by Mr. Abanindranath Tagore, the founder of the modern Bengal school of painting, who has discussed this verse in the *Modern Review*, xv, (1914), pp. 581-2.

2

शासी भवति शङ्कारः मिती छात्रः प्रकीर्तिः ।

कपोतः करुणायै रक्ती रौद्रः प्रकीर्तिः ॥

गौरी वीरस्तु विश्वेयः कृष्णायै भयानकः ।

शीलवर्णस्तु दीभतसः पीतर्घं वाङ्मतः च तः ॥

*Nātyaśāstra*, ch. vi, 42-43 (p. 63).

of the household temple where the gods were worshipped, of the worship offered and the gifts made to the deity to whom one was particularly devoted,<sup>1</sup> it is apparent that such images were familiar objects in his days. The *Lalitavistara* speaks of the numerous images of the gods that came down from their pedestals to do obeisance to the child Buddha when he made his appearance in the *Devakula*, the quarter of the palace occupied by the gods.<sup>2</sup> Besides these images for worship, representations in wood and stone of human beings, both male and female, *puruṣapratimā* and *stripratimā*—were used by the class for whom Vātsyāyana wrote, for decoration and as appertenances of love. Stands for placing images, or *pīṇḍolikās*, are mentioned by Vātsyāyana, and life-size statues in wood or stone evidently stood on them in every *nāgaraka*'s house, as Vātsyāyana speaks of very familiar uses made of them by lovers who often gave an indication of their passion for a lady by slyly kissing or embracing a statue in her sight. Similar other uses of portrait-statues in the harems of kings have been indicated by Vātsyāyana.<sup>3</sup> In Bhāsa's *Pratimā-nāṭaka* (Act III) we read of the life-like representations of past kings ranged round a room as in a museum.

The demand for beautiful dolls and play-things of which the girls in Vātsyāyana's age appear to have been very fond, offered a vast field for the exercise of the plastic art. Vātsyāyana advises a young man trying to win the affection of a maiden to present her with dolls (*duhitrkā*) made of wood, horn, ivory, cloth, wax, plaster or earth. Erotic pairs of human figures made of wood might also be presented; such erotic pairs (*mithunam*) cut of the leaves of trees were also sent by

1 See *Kāmasūtra*, p. 224 (*sūtra* 3); इष्टदेवतीप्रवारः—p. 311 (*sūtra* 20); देवतानां पूजोपहारप्रवत्तनम् etc.—p. 340 (*sūtra* 25).

2 अचित्तमो देवप्रतिमा etc.—*Lalitavistara*, viii, 119.

3 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 289 (*sūtra* 3); p. 290 (*sūtra* 5); p. 203 (*sūtra* 14) also विचकर्म्मा; प्रतिमाद्य च च 'सक्रान्तकमालिङ्गम च'—p. 111 (*sūtra* 31).

sweethearts to each other. Playthings liked by girls are miniature cooking utensils, small temples of the gods (*devakula grhaka*), toy animals like goats or rams and playthings made of earth, split bamboo or wood, such as cages of birds. Small *vinās*, stands for images, ear ornaments made of wax or whatever other objects of art might be demanded by the girl of his choice, must be presented by the man courting her either openly or in secret.<sup>1</sup>

### MUSIC

Three *kalās* appertaining to music, singing (*gīta*), playing on instruments (*vādyā*) and dancing (*nṛtya*) have been given by our author the first place in the list of arts; besides, there are more—*udakarālyā* or playing on cups filled with water in varying proportions and *vinādamarukarādyāni*, that is, playing on string instruments of which the chief was the *vinā* and also on percussion instruments represented by the *damaru*.<sup>2</sup> This last most probably represents the earliest from which in course of time had evolved the *mrdaṅga*, which has lately been proved by one of our eminent scientists to be the most scientifically constructed percussion instrument ever used.<sup>3</sup> The *mrdaṅga* was already known to the *Mahāvagga* and Asvaghosa speaks of songs sung to the accompaniment of the *mrdaṅga* and of music produced on *mrdaṅgas* struck by the fingers of women, and the *Lalitavistara* mentions it again and again with other varieties of drums.<sup>4</sup>

1 Ibid, pp. 202-3 (*sūtras* 12-14); p. 208 (*sūtra* 4).

2 Ibid, p. 32 (*sūtra* 16).

3 Prof. C. V. Raman "The Acoustic Knowledge of Ancient Hindus," *Central Hindu College Magazine* (Benares), January 1920, pp. 9-12.

4 अज्ञिष्या कर्त्त्वे वीर्णं अज्ञिष्या कर्त्त्वे मुतिष्ठम्—*Mahāvagga*, i, 7, 1-2; सदृशोत्तमः—*Buddhacarita*, i, 45; नारीकारायाभिहृतैः-मृदंगैः—Ibid, ii, 30, भरीष्मद्वप्यवत्तुष्ववीणाविष्णु-वस्त्रकीमप्रसाङ्गस्तथांभाष्याः—*Lalitavistara*, v, 40.

I am inclined to think that Vatsyayana's *damaruka* stands here for percussion instruments in general. The *vijā* even then formed the most popular of the musical instruments in India, as is apparent from the fact that it formed a necessary piece of furniture in the rooms of every *nāgaraka* on which, as we have seen, he played almost every evening. Such a *vijā* in the room of Nanda reminds the bereaved Sundari of her dear absent husband,<sup>1</sup> and Bhāsa's Cārudatta is overwhelmed by its merits and is enthusiastic in its praises.<sup>2</sup> Of wind instruments, the flute made of a bamboo reed (*vayusī*) is mentioned by Vatsyayana who praises it as capable of winning the heart of any girl when used in the way he prescribes.<sup>3</sup> In the *Buddhacarita* and *Lalitavistara* it is called *vegu* and is generally associated with the *vijā*; and women play upon it.<sup>4</sup> We have seen that music with or without dances was enjoyed by our *nāgaraka* every evening. The *nāgaraka*'s sons received lessons in music at the *gāndhureasālā* or college of music belonging perhaps to the city or to the *gāya* or corporation to which he belonged. Sweet and ravishing songs delighting the ear, form, according to Vatsyayana, the readiest means of gaining the love of a man or a woman, and sometimes songs were specially composed containing a mention of the name and the family of the lover.<sup>5</sup> Concerts (*tūryya*) are mentioned by Vatsyayana, in which a party of musicians of both sexes sang and played

1 दीप्तप्रसिद्धिः—*Saudarananda Kāvya*, vi, 32.

2 दीप्ता नानासमुद्रेभिः रसम्।—*Cārudatta* (Trivandrum Sanskrit Series), Act iii, p. 49.

3 वंशं वादयनो या शब्दं गर्याति सा वशा भवति।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 379 (*sūtra* 43).

4 करलप्रवेण—*Buddhacarita*, v, 49; वीणावेण वाहकौ, etc.—*Lalitavistara*, v, 40; xxi, 301, etc.; also नार्या सुदितमना: प्रसन्नधिता वेणुभी सधुरमनोरमं रसमन्।—*Ibid.*, xiii, 163.

5 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 364 (*sūtra* 15); p. 203 (*sūtra* 18); p. 312 (*sūtra* 22); p. 314 (*sūtra* 32).

together on various instruments. A party of such players was sometimes strengthened by its head (*rauyopajivin*) giving his daughter in marriage to a clever artist who could help in the concert. An actress (*ikṣaṇikā*) is mentioned by Vātsyāyana as a very good carrier of love messages,<sup>1</sup> because, as Cārudatta says, a person making a living by the *kalās*, like her, must be very clever at all sorts of tricks.<sup>2</sup> Bharata says that sometimes on the stage the female parts were acted by men and an actress sometimes acted that of a man.<sup>3</sup> Some actresses were maintained by the king and suitable quarters in the palace were set apart for them.<sup>4</sup>

### CRAFTS

In a society where both men and women wore ornaments, it was quite natural that the crafts of the jewller (*māyikāra*) and goldsmith (*saunvariṇika* or *suvarṇakāra*) should prosper. The *nāgaraka*, when going to his club or to his garden picnic, wore ornaments and the king did so on his formal visit to the queens every afternoon.<sup>5</sup> The statues that have come down from this age bear this out. It was, however, the demands of the ladies, who could not appear before their husbands without having ornaments on, that furnished the amplest occupation to the goldsmith and the jeweler. Some of the ladies decorated their whole person with ornaments. Those who could not afford to have pure gold ornaments had to be satisfied with those made of an inferior kind of gold alloyed with an inferior metal. Beyond a general mention of the *alampikāras* Vātsyāyana does not name other ornaments

1 Ibid, p. 280 (*sūtra* 62); p. 366 (*sūtras* 23-24).

2 Cārudatta, Act iii, p. 64.

3 श्री पृष्ठः प्रकृति कुर्वन्ति श्रीमां प्रकृतिपि वा इति—Bharata, *Nātyaśāstra*, Chap. xii, 160ff.

4 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 243 (*sūtras* 78-79).

5 Ibid, p. 53 (*sūtra* 40); p. 243 (*sūtra* 75).

than rings which are very frequently referred to as tokens of love presented by lovers to each other.<sup>1</sup> The *Lalitavistara* mentions a ring worth several lacs and a pearl necklace that was worth many times that sum. Cārudatta's wife also had a pearl necklace given to her by her parents worth a lac.<sup>2</sup> The testing of jewels and coins (*rupya-ratna-parikṣa*) was a useful art in this community and Vātsyāyana knows a *Paikāika*, a diamond-cutter, whose craft was to purify or refine precious stones.<sup>3</sup> Plates and other vessels made of the precious metals, gold and silver, are mentioned by Vātsyāyana and were evidently often used in the houses of the rich while those made of the baser metals, copper, bell-metal or iron, were used by ordinary people; moreover, vessels made of earth, split-bamboo, wood and skins were in very general use.<sup>4</sup>

Besides the jeweller, the goldsmith and the diamond-cutter, the dyer of clothes (*ratnajaka*) also was an artisan who appears to have access to the inner apartments of the *nāgaraka*'s house and to take orders from the ladies direct. Blue and orange (colour of the *kusumbha* flower) seem to be the dyes most fashionable; the dyer is by preference called the *nīlikusumbhārañjaka*. The yellow dye was also perhaps generally used, though the dye obtained from turmeric (*haridrā*) provides a proverbial expression for denoting fickle, impermanent affection.<sup>5</sup> Sundari, Nanda's beloved wife, is

1. सार्वादिकोऽलक्षणार्थीयोगी, p. 341 (*sūtra* 26); महिरल्लभागमल्लकरणम्।—Ibid, p. 341 (*sūtra* 27). About rings see ibid, p. 241 (*sūtra* 80); p. 261 (*sūtra* 21); p. 274 (*sūtra* 35); p. 292 (*sūtra* 20), etc.

2. अर्नकशतसहस्रमल्लीयकम्।—*Lalitavistara*, xii, 142; कोटिशतसहस्रमल्लीयन च सुकाहारिण।—Ibid, vii, 83ff. Cārudatta, p. 32.

3. *Kāmasūtra*, p. 32 (*sūtra* 16); p. 259 (*sūtra* 12).

4. Ibid, p. 337 (*sūtra* 7); p. 228 (*sūtra* 27).

5. नीलोकुमभरतकादिः, etc.—Ibid, p. 259 (*sūtra* 12), इरिदारागी च।—Ibid, p. 330 (*sūtra* 17).

described as weaving a garment of the colour of the ruby (*padmarāga*) which is no doubt the same as the *kusumbha* colour of Vātsyāyana, and in the *Buddhacarita* a lady is represented as wearing a blue dress.<sup>1</sup> Earlier still, these very same dyes appear to have been in favour. The noble Liechavi youths who went out of Vesāli to pay their respects to the great Buddha are described in the *Mahāvagga* as wearing blue, red and yellow robes besides white ones ; the same work enumerates a number of other colours being used by people living in the enjoyments of the world, though even there the blue, yellow and red are given the first place.<sup>2</sup> The economic housewife is described by Vātsyāyana as getting the rejected clothes of her husband cleaned and redyed and then presenting them to the servants.<sup>3</sup>

A number of artisans are mentioned by Vātsyāyana as helping the *nāgaraka* in the decoration of his person and thus in his quest of love, and are spoken of by Vātsyāyana as his friends: among them we find in the first place, the florist who looks after his flowerbeds, who makes garlands for his neck and chaplets for his head, and who helps him in preparing floral decorations for presentation to his beloved.<sup>4</sup> Next comes the perfumer (*sauvandhika*) whom, as we have seen, he patronised very liberally. Then we have the goldsmith, the betel-leaf-seller, as also the washerman, the barber and the wine-seller. The women folk of these artisans were also regarded by him as his friends (*mitrāṇi*).<sup>5</sup> This establishment of friendly relations between the wealthy *nāgaraka* and the craftsman appears to indicate a great respect for the

1 पञ्चरात्रं वसनं वसाना ।—*Saundarananda Kāvya*, vi, 26 ; नीलांशका—*Buddhacarita*, iv, 33 ; नीलकल्पवसिनी—*Ibid*, xii, 107.

2 *Mahāvagga*, vi, 30, 3 and viii, 29.

3 *Kāmasūtra*, p. 230 (*sūtra* 34).

4 पुर्णांकरणम्, मातृप्रथमविकल्पाः, शैवरकादीड्योजनम्, कर्णपतभाष्टः etc.—*Ibid*, p. 32.

5 See p. 69 (*sūtras* 37 and 38) ; p. 300 (*sūtra* 9).

crafts which are nowhere in Vātsyāyana spoken of as implying any inferior rank or position.

### THE POSITION OF THE GANIKĀS

In the age of Vātsyāyana, the *gāyikā*, or the educated and accomplished woman about the town, occupied a peculiar position. Though belonging to the class of "public women," still she appears to have been treated with special consideration. But it was not every courtesan that received this appellation: it was only when a woman of this class was marked out by high intellectual attainments, and striking pre-eminence in the arts that she won the coveted title of *gāyikā*. She must have her mind cultivated and trained by a thorough education (*sāstraprahatebuddhīḥ*) and Vātsyāyana lays down that it is only when a courtesan is versed in both the series of sixty-four arts or *kalās* enumerated by him and is endowed with an amiable disposition, personal charms and other winning qualities, that she acquires the designation of a *gāyikā* and receives a seat of honour in the assemblies of men. She is always honoured by the king and is highly lauded by men qualified to appreciate merit; her favours and company are sought for, and she becomes, in fact, the observed of all observers, a model and pattern for all.<sup>1</sup> In the *Lalitavistara*, king Suddhodana desires for the young Siddhārtha a bride who was as much learned in the *sāstras* and as accomplished in the arts as a *gāyikā*.<sup>2</sup> Bharata's *Nātyasāstra*, which is a work of the same period, speaks equally, if not more, enthusiastically, about the excellences of the *gāyikā*. Bharata describes her as one who knows

१ आभिरभुक्तिं विश्रा शीलक्षपश्चान्विता ।

भभते गणिकाशब्दं आर्जनं च जनसंसदिः ॥

पूजिता सा सदा राजा गुणवत्तिं संकृता ।

प्रार्थनीश्वरिभिर्गमया च लक्ष्यभूता च जायते ॥—Ibid., p. 40 (*sūtras* 20-21).

२ गान्धी विधिशक्तिर्गता गणिका शर्वेषः ; *Lalitavistara*, xii, 139.

the practical application of various arts, who possesses a deep knowledge of many of the sciences (*sāstras*), who is skilled in the sixty-four *kalās* and in dancing to the accompaniment of music, whose conduct is marked by respect towards superiors, by graceful and engaging manners, by charming gestures and sweet blandishments ; who possessed strength and firmness of mind and at the same time modesty and a sweetness of temper ; who is free from the characteristic defects of women ; who speaks gracefully and clearly ; who is clever in work and does not get tired—a woman possessed of all these rare qualities and accomplishments would be called a *gāyikā*.<sup>1</sup> That she was regarded by Bharata as a woman of great education and culture appears from the fact that the *gāyikā*, when introduced as a character in a drama, is, according to him, to speak Sanskrit.<sup>2</sup> The uses to which the *gāyikā* puts her money are also characterised by a desire for public good and her charity shows the noble tendencies of her cultured mind. The *gāyikās* of the highest class, says Vātsyāyana, consider it as the highest gain to themselves when they receive sufficient money to spend on the building of temples, excavation of tanks, planting of gardens, erection of bridges and of houses for sacrifice and ceremonies or the institution of permanent arrangements for the worship of the gods. They valued very highly any chance of giving away cows to Brāhmaṇas, of course through a third person, because no Brāhmaṇa would accept anything from a courtesan.<sup>3</sup>

The *gāyikā* literally appears to mean a woman who is the member of a *gāya* or corporation, whose charms are the

<sup>1</sup> *Bharatiya Nātyāśāstra*—(Nirṇaya-Sāgara Press ed.), Chap. xxiv, 109-113.

<sup>2</sup> यात्रय गणिकाद्याय गिर्वकार्थकाद्यव च । कालावस्थान्तरक दीप्त यात्र्य पात्र्य तु संख्यतम् ॥—*Ibid.*, Chap. xvii, 37-38.

<sup>3</sup> *Kāmasūtra*, p. 340 (*sūtra* 25).

common poetry of the whole body of men associated together by a common bond, economic or political. Manu associates the *gaya* and the *gāyikā* in one verse saying that the food offered by both were equally to be refused by a Brahmin.<sup>1</sup> The *gaya* might be a corporation of citizens, the *nāgarikā-jana-samavāya* of Vātsyāyana like the one to which our *nāgaraka* belonged, or it might be a political body like that of the Licchavis of Vaisālt whose *gāyikā*, Ambapālikā, was a glory of their capital and was credited with all the virtues and qualities contemplated by Vātsyāyana and Bharata, thus testifying that their definitions were not fanciful and imaginary. We read in the *Mahāvagga* that she was charming, attractive, graceful, possessed of a fine and tender complexion, generous, and proficient in dancing, song and music. The wealth and power that the *gāyikā* of Vaisālt possessed and the position that she occupied, were in no way inferior to those of the best of the proud Licchavis; her train was as numerous and as sumptuously decorated, her carriages were as magnificent as those of the Licchavis against whom she drove up axle to axle, wheel to wheel, and yoke to yoke. Her presence made the city of Vaisālt shine forth in great splendour and glory. She constituted, as it were, a valued institution of the city, the high model of beauty and art thus set up by the *gāyikā* of Vesālt roused a merchant of the rival city of Rājagaha to induce king Bimbisāra to have this institution of *gāyika* in his own capital which suffered in this respect in comparison with the chief city of the *garudājya* or republic of the Licchavis.<sup>2</sup> It shows that in those early times *gāyikās* were not so numerous as they became in Vātsyāyana's days. But we observe that in the days of Kātyāyana, the author of the *Vārttika-sūtras* of the grammatical school of Pāṇini, there were already guilds of *gāyikas* (*gāyikyan*), as

१. ग्राम्य गणिकानाम विद्या च सुगच्छत् ।—*Manu*, iv, 209.

2. *Mahāvagga*, vi, 30 and viii, 1.

explained in the *Mahābhāṣya*, just as we read of the *gāṇikā-saṅgha* in Vātsyāyana.<sup>1</sup>

We may also note the fact that Buddha excludes from his fold the eunuch and the hermaphrodite, but not the *gāṇikā*, who does not appear to have been looked upon as a moral outcaste past redemption. The Buddhist religious books have hardly anything to say against Ambapālikā, the courtesan of Vaiśālī, nor do they suggest that there was anything peculiar or out of the way in the favour that Buddha showed towards her. Reading the *Vinaya-Piṭaka* we are indeed astonished to see how careful and anxious the Buddha was in order not to offend public opinion and to give a decent and respectable appearance to his congregation. He thought it disreputable and exceedingly revolting to the sense of common decency of the people to harbour sinners like the parricide or the matricide, but apparently he experienced no difficulty in ordaining a courtesan who had reformed herself; he could take her in without causing a shock to the moral susceptibilities of the people and in fact some of the noble sisters (*theris*), whose inspired songs have been compiled in the *Therigatha*, had reformed their life which before ordination was not quite above reproach.

The position that the *gāṇikā* enjoyed may be explained by the fact that in a society characterised by aesthetic refinement as was that of the age of Vātsyāyana, women who possessed special proficiency in the arts were respected for the value of their art, and their company was sought for by all lovers of art; the long training and education needed for the acquisition of such literary and artistic accomplishments as the *gāṇikā* possessed, could not be obtained by a girl who was married and had to manage a household, especially as she was married rather early, though Vātsyāyana's chapter on courtship shows

1. वैदारायण—*Pāṇini*, iv, 2, 40. वृष्टिकायाचेति वृत्ताव्यम् । वृष्टिकामा उत्तीर्णी वृष्टिव्यम् । *Mahābhāṣya* of Patañjali. Cf. पृष्ठिता वृष्टिकामेवंविद्यो तो च एतत्—*Kūmarasūtra*, p. 182 (सूत्रा 52).

that many of them remained unmarried even after puberty. Moreover, it was certainly not considered decent for such a girl to attend the public schools of art or *gāndharva-sālās*, where the daughters of the *gāṇikās* received lessons in the arts, and formed, as Vātsyāyana says, acquaintance with the sons of the wealthy citizens;<sup>1</sup> nor could any but very wealthy parents afford to give their daughters such education at home. Where the parents were very rich, as in the case of the daughters of princes and high officials, they did receive, as we have seen before, a thorough education in the arts and sciences. Gopā was as learned and clever as any *gāṇikā*, as the *Lalitavistara* says. Then again, the wedded wife, on account of her manifold duties in the household, could not cultivate the arts as thoroughly as she would like to; besides, the great regard for purity in the married woman and the strict and rigid rules that guided her conduct even in the age of Vātsyāyana, prohibited, as we have seen above, her receiving lessons in the arts except from her own husband. We see, therefore, that the *gāṇikās*, like the Hetæræ in the Athens of Pericles, were generally more educated and better skilled in the arts than the married women, and the *nāgarakas*, though they had devoted wives at home, as the ideal of a wife drawn by Vātsyāyana shows, were attracted by the intellectual and artistic qualities of the educated *gāṇikā*. Such a noble soul as Bhāsa's Cārudatta, though he had a devoted wife at home, who was ready to sacrifice the last bit of her personal property for his sake and for whom he himself had a great regard, had no scruple in falling in love with the actress Vasantasenā, and the *Mṛcchakaṭikā* makes him even marry her.<sup>2</sup> With such ideals of the

१ रिता कथावहृषि जान्मेष्यात्तायात्....सन्दर्भवीतः।—Ibid, p. 364 (sūtra 15).

2 *Cārudatta*, Act iii, pp. 63 ff. Vātsyāyana also refers to the marriage with a courtesan, though it was fully binding only for one year, after which period, the husband still retained some, but not

devoted wife as we have in Vātsyāyana and in Bhāsa's Cārudatta, it cannot be said with any sound reason that the nāgaraka sought the company of the *gāṇikā* because his life at home was miserable or unbearable, but evidently he was drawn by her accomplishments. Even the general public, though they despised her for the life she led, tolerated her on account of her high artistic qualifications which they found many occasions to enjoy and appreciate at the *prekṣāṇikas* or performances at the festive assemblies (*saṃjās*) such as we have described above.

exclusive, claim to her affections :—पाणिवहस देवदूरमविषयेनां यथा जानिनी  
आत् जर्जं यपि धन्वन्तरात् इति—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 365 (stūtras 20-22).

## CONCLUSION

We have thus seen that the *nagaraka* was a man of considerable intellectual culture and aesthetic refinement, but at the same time he was not very scrupulous with regard to sexual morality. He is the product of an age when wealth and riches were flowing into India through an extensive commerce with the east and the west and the picture that the *Kāmasūtra* furnishes of his life also shows the virtues and vices characteristic of such an age. In the first place we observe that this materialistic prosperity had led to the formation in the country of materialistic ideals that made more of the comforts of the world than of *dharma* or the life of discipline. There are people, says Vātsyāyana, who hold that the *dharma*s should not be practised, in as much as the fruits of such practice,—the rewards for these austerities, are only prospective, and moreover they are doubtful and uncertain at the best ; who but a fool would give away to others, what he has in his own hands, in the hope of some future gain ? Better a dove to-day than a peacock to-morrow. Better a copper token (*kārṣapāṇa*) that is certain than a piece of sterling gold—a *niska*—the acquisition of which is doubtful. Vātsyāyana, of course, combats these ideas, but it shows that the materialistic ideals of pleasure are there in the country, though limited only to a small section of the people, mostly to the *Laukūyatikas* or materialists.<sup>1</sup>

It must not be imagined, however, that the age in which Vātsyāyana lived was as a whole an age of gross materialism or that the whole of Indian society at the time bore this

1. ए धर्मादेत् । समाप्तात्मान् । दार्शिकताव् । काल्यानिश्च वक्षते परमं कुर्यात् । वरम् वापोऽस्मि न वर दार्शिकाप्रिकाद्वार्शिकः कापंपच इति काल्यानिकाः ।—Ibid, p. 19 (stanzas 25-30).

character ; it will be a mistake to suppose that the *nāgaraka*'s easy morality was even a main feature of the character of the majority of the people. In the first place, Vātsyāyana paints in his *nāgaraka* the picture of a particular and limited section of the dwellers in cities. A *nāgaraka* is a wealthy person who has received a liberal education in youth and has already earned a competence by inheritance or by personal endeavour, so that he can afford to lead the life of comfort and pleasure in a city. The class which he represents has lived in all ages and in all countries wherever economic prosperity has enabled a section of the people to command and enjoy the good things of the earth. His counterpart is not wanting in our modern days in countries which are rich in material wealth and where the people "enjoy life." He can be traced with but few changes, and these only in details, in the salons of Paris and Vienna, of London and Berlin. In India itself, his successors though not absolutely extinct, are but few, for the good reason that the abundance of material riches and the consequent joys of life out of which the *nāgaraka* could grow, have departed from this country.

Then, again, we observe that the character of the matron was marked by firmness and purity, modesty and restraint, showing that the general ideals of society as regards sexual purity had not been lowered since the age of the *Dharmasūtras*. In fact it is apparent from what Vātsyāyana says, that the main current of social life had not undergone much transformation and that the ideals set up in the *Dharma*-codes still controlled society. He asserts that the whole structure of society is upheld and maintained by the observance of the principle of the division of the people into *varṇas* or classes and into *āśramas* or stages of life. In this society a man does not marry until he has finished his education ; after marrying he lives the life of a good citizen and brings up a family, and in advanced years, retires from worldly activities and devotes himself exclusively to matters spiritual. The Brāhmaṇas among the four classes were highly respected, their blessings

being considered as conducive to long life and glory.<sup>1</sup> Respect for the *Vedas* and the other Holy scriptures is insisted upon ; it is declared that there is no room for doubting the validity of their teachings : in matters relating to life in this world, which can produce visible effects, one has to guide oneself in accordance with the ordinances of the Sacred Codes, and in matters relating to the life beyond and producing effects beyond the physical vision of man, one is also guided by the prescriptions of Holy Writ such as the performance of sacrifices and similar other observances. It is declared that the authority of the sacred scriptures is binding with regard to *dharma* or the principles of right conduct which have to be learned from *Sruti*, or the *Vedas*, and also from the assembly of men proficient in them.<sup>2</sup>

Vedic sacrifices still appear to have constituted an important feature of the religious exercises of the people ; along with other common occurrences of life sacrifices are mentioned by Vātsyāyana as occasions which permitted a gathering of people of both sexes and we are told that even the virtuous matron could attend such assemblies with the permission of her husband. The erection of sacrificial altars and houses, formed one of the most earnest desires of women, nay even of the courtesans. Sacrifices formed an indispersable part of the ceremony of marriage, which, if once performed in the presence of fire, i. e., with sacrifices, could never be repudiated ; this is declared as the rule upheld by all teachers and throughout his chapter on courtship and marriage,

1 ब्राह्मणान्नं प्रशस्तानामादिषः ( यशस्मायुष्म ) ।—Ibid, p. 380 (*sūtra* 51) ; also p. 170 (*sūtra* 36). Cf. वर्णविश्वाचारशिल्पचालाच् लोकवाचावः etc.—Ibid, p. 20 (*sūtra* 31) ; ब्राह्मचर्यमिव लाविद्यायहस्तान् ।—p. 12 (*sūtra* 6) ; वाक्ये विद्यायहस्तादीनर्थान् । कामं च चीवने । स्थादिर्देवं भूतं च ।—pp. 11-12 (*sūtras* 2-4).

2 ..... लोकिकलाद्दद्यार्थादप्रवृत्तान् यज्ञादीना यज्ञादीन प्रवर्तनम्, लोकिकलाद्दद्यार्थादप्रवृत्तेभ्य निर्भयादिभः यज्ञादीव निवारणं भूतः । त्रृतिर्भवेत्तद्यज्ञादप्रवृत्तेत् ।—Ibid, pp. 12-13 (*sūtras* 7-8).

Vātsyāyana advises a young lover, again and again, to ratify his marriage with the maiden of his love with sacrifices in the fire brought from the house of a *srotriya*, i. e. a man who keeps up the sacrificial fire constantly burning in his house and daily offers oblations in it. A person initiated for sacrifice (*dikṣita*) is also mentioned along with persons who have taken certain vows or have assumed the marks of certain sects of ascetics.<sup>1</sup> This makes it abundantly clear that the sacrifices laid down in the *grhya-sūtras* still held a prominent place in the life of the period when Vātsyāyana lived and here he is corroborated by epigraphic evidence. The inscriptions in Western India of the early centuries of the Christian era show that sacrifices on a large scale were performed at the time and munificent gifts were made to Bhikṣus and Brāhmaṇas even by persons of foreign extraction like Uṣabhadāta. Vātsyāyana speaks of a thousand cows given away to Brāhmaṇas. Moreover the daily performance of *bali-karma* at the *nāgaraka*'s under the supervision of his wife shows the unabated influence of the *grhyasūtras*.<sup>2</sup> Then again, the *nāgaraka*, though a pleasure-seeker, was a worshipper of the gods. We have already referred to the niche at the head of his bed for holding an image of the *iṣṭa-devatā* or the deity to whom he was particularly

1 प्रतिपद्मामभिप्रेतावकाशवतिनौ नायकः श्रोत्रियागारादग्निमानाय कुशानास्तीर्य यथाष्टुति हुला च विः परिक्लीते। अग्निसाचिका हि विवाहां न निवर्त्तते इत्याचार्यं समयः।—Ibid, pp. 219-220 (*sūtras* 11 and 13). See also pp. 220-222 (*sūtras* 14-27); and आवाहि विवाहे यज्ञे गमनं सख्यामि: स ह गोष्ठैँ देवताभिगमनमित्यत्यनुज्ञाता कुर्यात्।—Ibid, p. 226 (*sūtra* 15). विवाहे यज्ञवस्त्रोक्तव्ये इत्यनुज्ञाता कुर्यात्।—Ibid, p. 274 (*sūtra* 41); स्वामीनामग्निचैत्यानां निवन्धनं इत्यनुज्ञाता कुर्यात्।—Ibid, p. 340 (*sūtra* 25); श्रोत्रियस्य ब्रह्मचारिणो दौचित्राणा ग्रन्थानो या इत्यनुज्ञाता कुर्यात्।—Ibid, p. 351 (*sūtra* 28).

2 For the epigraphic evidence see *Epigraphia Indica*, vol. viii, pp. 59-96, etc.; also *Report of the Arch. Surv. of Western India*, vols. iv and v. गोस्वामीज्ञाता पात्रान्विते ब्राह्मणेभ्यो दानं।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 340 (*sūtra* 25); and विषवणाचरितविक्रमै—Ibid, p. 224 (*sūtra* 3).

devoted and also to the daily worship of the gods at the household temple. Moreover, he, and specially his wife, took part in fasts and observances whose number was apparently not insignificant. Besides, we have seen, how at regular, as well as irregular, intervals the public took part in grand religious festivals (*ghatā*) often accompanied by processions of images and attended by men and women in large numbers. Even a courtesan considered it as the greatest happiness of her life (*labbatisaya*) to institute arrangements for the worship of the gods.<sup>1</sup> All these facts go to prove that religious observances played a great part in the life of the people in Vatsyayana's time, and that the Code of Manu had at the time acquired its full authority over the public mind as is shown by Vatsyayana who speaks of *Sriyambhuva Manu* as the person who had taken up the *Dharma* section of Prajāpati's all-embracing encyclopædia and dealt with it in a separate treatise. Besides, Yajñavalkya's great code, second in importance to Manu alone, is supposed to have been composed about the time when Vatsyayana lived.<sup>2</sup>

It was in this period, again, that Mahāyāna Buddhism grew and spread, and it must be admitted that the literature of the Mahāyāna school bears on its face the impress of this age of aesthetic refinement and culture. Its great preacher, Asvaghoṣa, sought to popularise his faith by writing dramas and magnificent poetical works instead of works on dry dialectics and abstruse theology. The few fragments that we possess of Asvaghoṣa's dramas, *Sāriputraprakarana* and others, show that in at least one of them the *gāṇikā* played almost as important a part as in Bhāsa's *Cārudatta*, and that

1 Ibid, p. 43 (*sūtra* 6); p. 224 (*sūtra* 3); p. 228 (*sūtra* 26); pp. 49-51; p. 226 (*sūtra* 15); p. 311 (*sūtra* 20); p. 340 (*sūtra* 25).

2 प्रजापतिर्हि प्रजाः सह तादो वित्तिनिवासनं विवर्यस्य साधनमयावानं गतसहस्रं वाचे प्रीत्वा । तस्यैकद्वयं स्वाध्यभ्युपी मनुष्यमौचिकारिकं पृथक् चकार ।—Ibid, p. 4 (*sūtras* 5-6). For Yajñavalkya, see Weber, *History of Indian Literature* (Eng. Trans.), p. 281.

too in a work where Buddha himself makes his appearance with some of his dearest disciples. Aśvaghosa was in the first place a theologian and a dialectician as his *Vajrasūti* would go to prove, but in an age of great æsthetic culture, he had to adapt himself to the refined tastes of his audience and so he sweetened the tasteless doses of his dry theological doctrines with the honey of poetry and music, and he knew how to mix the ingredients with all the skill of a master. The *Lalitavistara* also has succeeded eminently in combining intense love and reverence for the Master with poetic skill and grace. The *Divyāvalāna* and the *Mahāvastu* also appear to have received, at least, some additions in this era of *kathās* and *ākhyānas* of which we find a frequent mention in Vātsyāyana.<sup>1</sup>

In the next place, we gather from the philosophical literature of the age in which Vātsyāyana lived, that it was one of intense philosophical speculation. Nāgārjuna in the second century A. D. had established his *Śūnyavāda* or Philosophic Nihilism and he was followed by a string of great logicians of his school. His success roused to activity all the orthodox schools of philosophy the representatives of which proceeded to compose new works, to write extensive commentaries on the already existing texts, or at any rate to bring their systems up to date by fresh additions calculated to combat successfully the new school that was gradually acquiring strength and volume. Whether we do or do not accept the conclusion of Prof. Jacobi that the *Nyāyadarśana* and the *Brahmasūtra* were originally composed between 200 and 450 A.D., we have less reason to doubt him when he assigns to this period the old commentators, Vātsyāyana, Upavarṣa and Baudhāyana (the *Vṛttikāra*) who were all working to bring their respective systems in line with the new ideas

<sup>1</sup> For Aśvaghosa's Dramas, see Lüders, *Königliche preuss. Turfan Exp., Kleinere Sanskrit Texte*, Heft I and *Das Śāriputraprakarana* (*Sitz. der K. preuss. Akad. d. Wiss.*), 1911.

originated by Buddhist thinkers. Even the author of the *Kāmasūtra* has shown the prevailing tendency of the time by defining his general concepts and discussing the current theories about them in the approved philosophical method, and he has approached his subject with the detachment of a scientific observer and the analytic skill of a subtle logician. Moreover, we must not forget that in the period embraced by the first four centuries of the Christian era, the *Mahābhārata* was receiving the final form in which we possess it now.<sup>1</sup>

There can be no doubt, then, that this age of great philosophical discovery and analysis, the age that produced the *Lalitavistara* and the code of Yājñavalkya, could not have been marked by a general low tone in moral life. The age to be studied as a whole requires a study of all sides of the Indian civilisation of the time based on a far ampler stock of materials than only Vātsyāyana can supply. Vātsyāyana's work deals with only one aspect of it and shows that his was an age of great intellectual activity in all directions, and the great thinker makes an analysis of the erotic feelings and of the elementary relations between the sexes in a right scientific spirit: in doing so he naturally turned for illustration to the class that had cultivated this side of the humanistics for centuries, at least since the time of Pāṇini, to whom as we have seen, the *nāgaraka* was a familiar character. Vātsyāyana does not cast a charm over illicit love, nor does he invest it with the halo of romance. He merely gives a frank and matter of fact account of the social sore, proceeds to a masterly analysis of the psychology of the man who seeks

<sup>1</sup> For Prof. Jacobi's views see *Journal of the American Oriental Society*, 1911, p. 29. For Vātsyāyana's philosophical discussions, see *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 11-25. For the date of the *Mahābhārata*, see E. W. Hopkins, *The Great Epic of India*, pp. 397-98 and Winternitz, *Geschichte*

such love—the jealousy, anger, hatred, passion, greed, selfishness that working within the brain of the human animal, cloud his judgment and pervert his tastes. He points out categorically that a scientific work (*sāstra*), dealing with a subject as a whole, must be exhaustive, but that is no reason why a particular practice described in it should be carried into effect; for example, the taste, the properties and the digestive qualities of dog's flesh are given in medical works, but that is no reason why it should be adopted as an article of diet by sober men.<sup>1</sup> He winds up his thesis by saying, "whenever, on account of the character of the subject dealt with, I had to speak about things that might smack of lust and desire, I have taken care immediately afterwards to censure and condemn them", and he adds that, he himself had followed the strictly pure life of a *brahmācārin* and had been deeply immersed in contemplation (*samādhi*) while composing the work for the benefit of the world and not for feeding the flames of desire. The ideal of life that he holds up, is that of harmonious blending of the three elements—*dharma*, *artha* and *kāma*—which sum up according to Indian ideas all human motives of action for the people of the world. He enjoins that a rightminded person should occupy himself with such actions as, while giving pleasure (*kāma*), do not stand in the way of the acquisition of the good things of the earth (*artha*), and at the same time do not disregard the behests of *dharma*, that is, as he explains, do not afford any ground for the fear of their being followed by evil effects hereafter. This is the same as the teaching of the *Bhagavadgītā* that God dwells in such desires as do not violate *dharma*. *Vātsyāyana* thus emphasises the working out of the threefold functions of man

<sup>1</sup> For *Vātsyāyana*'s analysis of illicit love see *Kāmasūtra*, pp. 60-65 (sutras 5-22), and his *Pāradārika* section, pp. 247-298. Cf. also शास्त्रमदौर्ये तावत् प्रयोगे कारणं भवेत् । शास्त्रार्थान् व्याप्तिगो विद्यात् प्रयोगात्मकदीशिकान् । रसवीयं-चिपाका इति श्रावास्यापि वैद्यके । कोरिता इति तत् किं शास्त्रचोक्त विचक्षणैः ।—Ibid, p. 170 (sutras 37-38).

(*trivarga*) in such a way that there may be no conflict among these three, while he is not unmindful of the fourth or fifth good of mankind, *riz.*, *mokṣa*,<sup>1</sup> the ultimate release from the limitations that curb the eternal growth of his soul.

1. अधिकारवशादुक्ता ये चिता रागवर्ज्ञाः । तदगतरमते व ते शब्दादिनिवारिताः ॥ तदेतद्वद्वाच्येष्व परिण च समाधिना । विहितं लोकवातार्थं न रागार्थोऽस्य संविधिः ॥ रचन् धर्मार्थकामानां स्थितिं स्वा लोकवर्तिनीम् । अस्य शास्त्रस्य तत्त्वशी भवलेष जितेदिशः ।—Ibid. pp. 381-382 (sūtras 54, 57 and 58). किं स्यापरत्त व्याग्ना कार्यं व्यक्तिं जायते । न चार्थप्नुः सुखं चेति शिष्टाकान् व्यवस्थिताः ॥ विवरणसाधकं यज्ञाह्योरिकाय वा पुनः । कार्यं तदपि कुर्वित न ल्ले कार्यं विवाधकम् ।—Ibid. p. 26 (sūtras 50-51). Cf. धर्माविकृद्धो भूतेषु कामोऽस्मि भरतर्थम् ॥—*Bhagavadgītā*, viii, 11 see also शाविदे धर्मै भौत्कं च ।—*Kāmasūtra*, p. 12 (sūtra 4).

**A. Riss,  
Y. Khodorovsky**

**Production  
of  
Ferroalloys**

**FOREIGN LANGUAGES PUBLISHING HOUSE  
Moscow**